

Attorney Docket No.: 5686.200-US

PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

EXPRESS MAIL CERTIFICATE

Box Patent Application
Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, DC 20231

Re: U.S. Patent Application for
Title: Non-Peptide GLP-1 Agonists
Applicants: Teng et al.

Sir:

Express Mail Label No. EL 473440300US

Date of Deposit : January 14, 2000

I hereby certify that the following attached paper(s) or fee

1. Filing Under 37 C.F.R. 1.53(b) (in duplicate)
2. Patent Application
3. Unexecuted Combined Declaration and Power of Attorney
4. Preliminary Amendment

are being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" under 37 C.F.R. 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

Carol McFarlane

(Name of person mailing paper(s) or fee)

Carol McFarlane
(Signature of person mailing paper(s) or fee)

Mailing Address:

Novo Nordisk of North America, Inc.
405 Lexington Avenue, Suite 6400
New York, NY 10017
(212) 867-0123

1c760 U.S. PTO
01/14/00

Attorney Docket No.: 5686.200-US

PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

FILING UNDER 37 C.F.R. 1.53(b)

Box Patent Application
Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, DC 20231

Express Mail Label No. EL 473440300US
Date of Deposit January 14, 2000

Sir:

This is a request for filing a patent application under 37 C.F.R. 1.53(b) of

Applicant(s): Teng et al.

Title: Non-Peptide GLP-1 Agonists

187 pages of specification 1 page of abstract

5 sheets of Declaration and Power of Attorney

[x] The filing fee is calculated as follows:

Basic Fee:	\$690.00
Total Claims: $15 - 20 = 0 \times 18 =$	\$0
Independent Claims: $1 - 3 = 0 \times 78 =$	\$0
Total Fee:	\$690.00

Priority of Danish application no. PA 1999 00041 filed on January 15, 1999 is claimed under 35 U.S.C. 119. A certified copy will follow herewith.

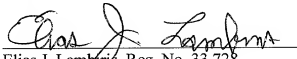
Priority of U.S. provisional application no. 60/116,116 filed on January 15, 1999 is claimed under 35 U.S.C. 119.

Address all future communications to Steve T. Zelson, Esq., Novo Nordisk of North America, Inc., 405 Lexington Avenue, Suite 6400, New York, NY 10174-6401.

Please charge the required fee, estimated to be \$690, to Novo Nordisk of North America, Inc., Deposit Account No. 14-1447. A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.

Respectfully submitted,

Date: January 14, 2000


Elias J. Lambiris, Reg. No. 33,728
Novo Nordisk of North America, Inc.
405 Lexington Avenue, Suite 6400
New York, NY 10174-6401
(212) 867-0123

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of: Teng et al.

Application No.: To be assigned

Group Art Unit: To be assigned

Filed: January 14, 2000

Examiner: To be assigned

For: Non-Peptide GLP-1 Agonists

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, DC 20231

Sir:

Before the above-captioned application is taken up for examination, entry of the following amendment is respectfully requested:

IN THE SPECIFICATION:

At page 1, after the title, insert

--CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims priority under 35 U.S.C. 119 of Danish application PA 1999 00041 filed on January 15, 1999, and U.S. 60/116,116 filed on January 15, 1999, the contents of which are fully incorporated herein by reference.--

IN THE CLAIMS:

Please cancel claims 5, 7-16, 18-20, 22-25, 27-29, 31-35, 38-51 and 54-64 without prejudice or disclaimer.

Please amend claim 2 as follows:

In the last line, delete "wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , L, M, A and B are as defined in claim 1".

Please amend claim 3 as follows:

At line 5, delete " wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , L, M, A and B are as defined in claim 1".

Please amend claim 4 as follows:

At line 1, delete "anyone of the preceding claims" and insert --claim 1--. At lines 4-4, delete ", wherein R^5 and R^6 in claim 1".

Please amend claim 6 as follows:

At line 1, delete "or 5".

Please amend claim 17 as follows:

At line 1, delete "anyone of the preceding claims" and insert --claim 1--. At lines 4-5, delete ", wherein m, n, r and R^9 are as defined in claim 1".

Please amend claim 21 as follows:

At line 1, delete "anyone of the preceding claims" and insert --claim 1--. At the last line, delete "wherein R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} , R^{13} , R^{14} , R^{15} , R^{16} , R^{17} , R^{18} , R^{18a} and R^{19} are as defined in claim 1".

Please amend claim 26 as follows:

At line 1, delete "anyone of the preceding claims" and insert --claim 1--. At line 4, delete "wherein m, n, R^9 , R^{9a} , R^{9b} , R^{9c} and R^{9d} are as defined in claim 1".

Please amend claim 30 as follows:

At line 1, delete "anyone of the preceding claims" and insert --claim 1--. At the last line, delete "wherein R^{12} to R^{20} are as defined in claim 1".

Please amend claim 36 as follows:

At line 1, after "of" insert --claim 1 of--. At line 5, delete "wherein M, B and R¹⁴ are as defined in anyone of the claims 1 or 26 to 35".

Please amend claim 37 as follows:

At line 1, after "of" insert --claim 1 of--. At line 6, delete ", and n, A, M and B are as defined in anyone of the claims 1 or 21 to 35".

Please amend claim 52 as follows:

At line 2, delete "anyone of the claims 1 to 50" and insert --claim 1--.

Please amend claim 53 as follows:

At lines 3 and 4, delete "according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50".

Please amend claim 65 as follows:

At lines 3-4, delete "anyone of the claims 1 to 50 or pharmaceutical composition according to claim 52 or 53" and insert --claim 1--.

REMARKS

This amendment is submitted to cancel claims in order to reduce the filing fee and to correct improper multiple dependent claims. Since only dependencies are altered, there is no new matter added, and entry of the amendment is respectfully requested.

Respectfully submitted,



Elias J. Lambiris, Reg. No. 33,728
Novo Nordisk of North America, Inc.
405 Lexington Avenue, Suite 6400
New York, NY 10174-6401
(212) 867-0123

Date: January 14, 2000

NON-PEPTIDE GLP-1 AGONISTS

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

5 The present invention relates to novel non-peptide GLP-1 agonists, pharmaceutical compositions comprising them, use of the non-peptide GLP-1 agonists for the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions and methods for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders and diseases wherein an activation of the human GLP-1 receptor is beneficial, especially metabolic disorders such as IGT (impaired glucose tolerance), Type 1 diabetes, Type 2

10 diabetes and obesity.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

15 GLP-1 (glucagon like peptide-1) is a 30 amino acid long peptide hormone secreted by the L-cells in the intestine.

GLP-1 consists of two native forms, GLP-1 (7-36) and GLP-1 (7-37), of the following amino acid sequences:

20 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17
His-Ala-Glu-Gly-Thr-Phe-Thr-Ser-Asp-Val-Ser-

 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28
Ser-Tyr-Leu-Glu-Gly-Gln-Ala-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-

25 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36
Ile-Ala-Trp-Leu-Val-Lys-Gly-Arg-X

wherein X is NH₂ for GLP-1(7-36) and Gly for GLP-1(7-37).

30 GLP-1 is a so-called incretin and its primary mechanisms of actions are to:

- Stimulate insulin secretion in a physiological and glucose-dependent manner
- Decrease glucagon secretion
- Inhibit gastric emptying

- Decrease appetite
- Stimulate growth/proliferation of β -cells.

Stimulating insulin secretion and at the same time decreasing glucagon secretion is probably what makes GLP-1 a very efficient blood glucose lowering agent (1). The very efficient blood glucose lowering as well as the glucose dependency of its action makes it an ideal candidate for the treatment of Type 2 diabetes (2-10). Furthermore, it may be useful for the treatment of Type 1 diabetes in combination with insulin (11). GLP-1 offers something that no other existing drug or drug candidate can provide: very efficient blood glucose lowering, even in SU (sulphonylurea)-failures (6), without the risk of serious hypoglycaemia. Apart from these major effects, GLP-1 has also been shown to increase the rate of insulin biosynthesis (12,13) and restore the ability of the β -cells to respond rapidly to rising plasma glucose in terms of first phase insulin release in rats (14). Thus, GLP-1 would be expected to be able to prevent or delay the progression from IGT to full blown Type 2 diabetes. Patients treated with GLP-1 compared to eg metformin or sulphonylureas, will be better managed and may as a result thereof have a much later transfer to insulin requiring therapy.

Recently, GLP-1 compounds have been shown to stimulate growth and proliferation of β -cells (15-17), thereby also supporting use of GLP-1 compounds and GLP-1 agonists for increasing the number of β -cells in a patient *in vivo*.

An important and perhaps primary defect in Type 2 diabetes patients may be an impaired incretin function (18,19). In fact, in the rather few patients with Type 2 diabetes so far investigated for this, all had a greatly decreased or absent insulin response to the "other" incretin hormone, namely GIP (Gastric Inhibitory Polypeptide) (19,20). Because GIP is the "first-in-line" incretin and GIP signalling is defective, meal-induced insulin secretion is also defective. This cannot be overcome with endogenous or exogenous GIP because the patients are insensitive to GIP, but it may be compensated for with GLP-1 (20). In contrast to GIP, the insulinotropic action of GLP-1 is preserved in diabetic patients (21). Replacing the incretin deficiency may also be why GLP-1 treatment is so effective.

The ability of GLP-1 to decrease appetite and energy intake is now firmly established, both in normal, lean people and in obese people (22-24). Obese subjects have been shown to have an attenuated GLP-1 release in response to meals (25,26). This may further add to the potential of GLP-1 treatment in the management of Type 2 diabetes.

tential of GLP-1 as being able to decrease weight in Type 2 diabetes patients. This use of GLP-1 is described further in WO No 98/20895 to Novo Nordisk A/S and WO No 98/28414 to Eli Lilly and Company.

- 5 GLP-1 is rapidly metabolised by the proteolytic enzyme Dipeptidyl Peptidase-IV (27) into an inactive or perhaps even antagonistic metabolite (28), complicating the use of GLP-1 as a drug.

- The use of GLP-1 and analogues of GLP-1 as well as fragments thereof in the treatment of
10 Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes and obesity are disclosed in several publications.

WO No 87/06941 and WO No 90/11296 to The General Hospital Corporation disclose GLP-1 fragments, including GLP-1(7-37) and GLP-1(7-36), and functional derivatives thereof for use as insulinotropic agents.

- 15 Furthermore, WO No 91/11457 to Buckley et al. discloses analogues of the active GLP-1 peptides 7-34, 7-35, 7-36, and 7-37 for use in the treatment of Type 2 diabetes and WO No 98/08871 to Novo Nordisk A/S discloses derivatives of GLP-1 for use in the treatment of diabetes and obesity which are especially useful as they are both metabolically stable and very
20 potent.

However, peptides are generally not known to be orally available.

- 25 Best care for patients would obviously be achieved if a drug was orally available. The provision of orally available non-peptide GLP-1 agonists would therefore constitute a highly valuable contribution to the art.

- The GLP-1 receptor is a so-called 7 transmembrane (7TM) G-protein coupled receptor. These receptors are transmembrane proteins consisting of a N-terminal extracellular part, a
30 transmembrane core and three extracellular and three intracellular loops. The receptors are coupled to a G-protein (consisting of three subunits) and then further to an effector system. The effector system for the GLP-1 receptor is the adenylyl cyclase enzyme. Upon activation of the receptor, adenylyl cyclase catalyses the formation of the second messenger cAMP from ATP.

US No 5,670,360 to Novo Nordisk A/S discloses the cloning and use of the GLP-1 receptor. Five superfamilies of these receptors are known. Of these the glucagon-secretin (B) family consists of the receptors for GLP-1, glucagon, GIP, secretin, VIP, PACAP, calcitonin, PTH, CRF, GRF and a few more.

The (B) family is characterised by a relative large N-terminal domain of the receptor. The natural ligands for these receptors are all large peptides and the binding (and consecutive activation) of the receptors by their natural ligands is believed to involve both the N-terminal domain and the transmembrane region.

Small non-peptide agonists for peptide receptors are generally considered very difficult to find.

The above characteristics of the (B) family receptors seem to further complicate the provision of an agonist and so far no small non-peptide agonists have been described for a receptor in the (B) family.

However, surprisingly we have found a whole new class of non-peptide GLP-1 agonists which activate the human GLP-1 receptor.

They may be characterised by activating the human GLP-1 receptor without competing with GLP-1 for the GLP-1 binding site in a competition binding assay.

Furthermore, experiments have shown that the affinity of the receptor for GLP-1 changes upon incubation with some of the compounds according to the invention.

It is believed that the compounds of the invention stabilise another conformation of the receptor than that stabilised by GLP-1.

G-protein coupled receptors are theoretically thought to exist in different conformations: R and R*, where R is the inactive receptor conformation and R* the active. The most recent literature speculates that there may be one or more intermediate states (31).

One understanding of antagonists and inverse agonists is that they are able to bind to and stabilise the inactive conformation of the receptor whereas agonists bind to and stabilise the active conformation. It is not really known what a partial agonist does in these models.

- 5 The compounds according to the invention may introduce a new model in order to accommodate their characteristics. In this model we introduce a further receptor conformation R** which is another active receptor conformation.

R* would then be the conformation that GLP-1 under normal circumstances stabilises where

- 10 R** is the conformation that the compounds according to the invention stabilises. A model with two different active receptor conformations may also offer an explanation for why some of the compounds according to the invention when tested in the assays are partial and not full agonists because one conformation may be able to elicit partial agonism only and the other full agonism.

15 DEFINITIONS

The following is a detailed definition of the terms used to describe the compounds of the invention:

- 20 "Halogen" designates an atom selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br or I.

The term "lower alkyl" in the present context designates a saturated, branched or straight hydrocarbon group having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. Representative examples include, but are not limited to, methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, tert-pentyl, n-hexyl, isohexyl and the like.

- 30 The term "lower alkenyl" as used herein represents a branched or straight hydrocarbon group having from 2 to 6 carbon atoms and at least one double bond. Examples of such groups include, but are not limited to, vinyl, 1-propenyl, 2-propenyl, isopropenyl, 1,3-butadienyl, 1-butenyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 2-methyl-1-propenyl, 1-pentenyl, 2-pentenyl, 3-pentenyl, 4-pentenyl, 3-methyl-2-butenyl, 1-hexenyl, 2-hexenyl, 3-hexenyl, 2,4-hexadienyl, 5-hexenyl and the like.

The term "lower alkynyl" as used herein represents a branched or straight hydrocarbon group having from 2 to 6 carbon atoms and at least one triple bond. Examples of such groups include, but are not limited to, ethynyl, 1-propynyl, 2-propynyl, 1-butynyl, 2-butynyl, 3-butynyl, 1-pentynyl, 2-pentynyl, 3-pentynyl, 4-pentynyl, 1-hexynyl, 2-hexynyl, 3-hexynyl, 5-hexynyl, 2,4-hexadiynyl and the like.

The term "lower alkanoyl" in the present context designates a group -C(O)-H or -C(O)-lower alkyl wherein lower alkyl has the above meaning. Representative examples include, but are not limited to, formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, valeryl, hexanoyl, heptanoyl and the like.

The term "cycloalkyl" as used herein represents a saturated carbocyclic group having from 3 to 10 carbon atoms. Representative examples are cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl and the like.

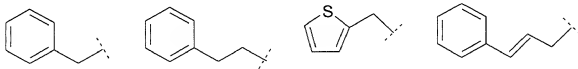
The term "cycloalkenyl" as used herein represents a carbocyclic group having from 3 to 10 carbon atoms containing at least one double bond. Representative examples are 1-cyclopentenyl, 2-cyclopentenyl, 3-cyclopentenyl, 1-cyclohexenyl, 2-cyclohexenyl, 3-cyclohexenyl, 2-cycloheptenyl, 3-cycloheptenyl, 2-cyclooctenyl, 1,4-cyclooctadienyl and the like.

The term "heterocyclyl" as used herein represents a saturated or partially unsaturated 3 to 10 membered ring containing one or more heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Representative examples are pyrrolidinyl, piperidyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, aziridinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl and the like.

The term "aryl" as used herein represents a carbocyclic aromatic ring system such as phenyl, biphenyl, naphthyl, anthracenyl, phenanthrenyl, fluorenyl, indenyl, pentalenyl, azulenyl, biphenylenyl and the like. Aryl is also intended to include the partially hydrogenated derivatives of the carbocyclic aromatic systems enumerated above. Non-limiting examples of such partially hydrogenated derivatives are 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyl, 1,4-dihydronaphthyl and the like.

The term "heteroaryl" as used herein represents a heterocyclic aromatic ring system containing one or more heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur such as furanyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, pyranyl, pyridyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, 1,2,3-triazinyl, 1,2,4-triazinyl, 1,3,5- triazinyl, 1,2,3-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,5-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiadiazinyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothieryl, benzothiophenyl (thianaphthenyl), indazolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, purinyl, quinazoliny, quinoliziny, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny, carbazolyl, azepiny, diazepiny, acridiny and the like. Heteroaryl is also intended to include the partially hydrogenated derivatives of the heterocyclic systems enumerated above. Non-limiting examples of such partially hydrogenated derivatives are 2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl, pyrroliny, pyrazoliny, indoliny, oxazolidiny, oxazoliny, oxazepiny and the like.

"Aryl-lower alkyl", "heteroaryl-lower alkyl", "aryl-lower alkenyl" etc. mean a lower alkyl or alkenyl as defined above, substituted by an aryl or heteroaryl as defined above, for example:



Certain of the above defined terms may occur more than once in the structural formulae, and upon such occurrence each term shall be defined independently of the other.

Within the context of the present invention, a non-peptide is understood to refer to any chemical compound which is not a peptide. In this context a peptide is defined as a linear sequence of natural amino acids coupled by peptide bonds of a length of at least 6 amino acids including derivatives thereof wherein one or more of the amino acid residues have been chemically modified, eg by alkylation, acylation, ester formation or amide formation.

Within the context of the present invention, a GLP-1 agonist is understood to refer to any compound which fully or partially activates the human GLP-1 receptor.

Within the context of the present invention, a partial GLP-1 agonist is understood to refer to any compound which increases the activity of the human GLP-1 receptor but which compared to GLP-1 is not able to effect a full response ($E_{max} < 100\%$ relative to GLP-1).

- 5 Within the context of the present invention, a GLP-1 antagonist is understood to refer to any compound which decreases the activity of the human GLP-1 receptor seen after stimulation with GLP-1.

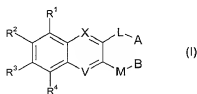
- 10 Within the context of the present invention an inverse GLP-1 agonist is understood to refer to any compound which not only decreases the activity of the human GLP-1 receptor seen after stimulation with GLP-1 but also decreases the activity of the non-stimulated receptor (basal activity).

- 15 Within the context of the present invention a metabolic disorder is understood to refer to any disorder associated with the metabolism or resulting from a defect of the metabolism.

Within the context of the present invention GLP-1 is understood to refer to either or both of the above two native forms GLP-1 (7-36) and GLP-1 (7-37) unless otherwise specified.

20 DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to compounds of the general formula (I):



- 25 wherein

R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, -OR⁵, lower alkyl, -SR⁵, -S(O)₂NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)₂R⁵, -S(O)R⁵, -C(O)NR⁵R⁶, -CH₂OR⁵, -CH₂NR⁵R⁶, -NR⁵R⁶, -C(O)R⁵ or -C(O)OR⁵,

- 30

wherein R^5 and R^6 independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R^5 and R^6 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

one of X and V is =N-, and the other is =CD- or =N-,

wherein D is hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, -OR⁷, -NR⁷R⁸, lower alkyl, aryl, -C(O)NR⁷R⁸, -CH₂OR⁷, -CH₂NR⁷R⁸ or -C(O)OR⁷,

wherein R^7 and R^8 independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R^7 and R^8 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

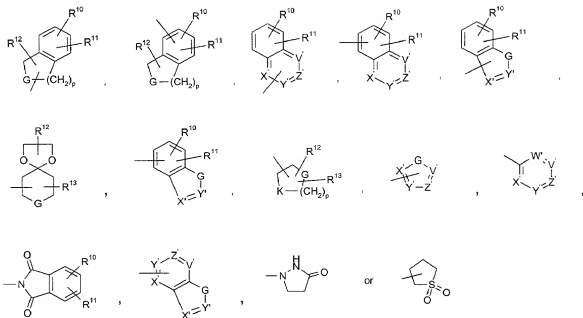
- L and M independently are a valence bond, $-(CH_2)_mS(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mO(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mCH=CH(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC\equiv C(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mCHR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mNR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC(O)NR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$,
 5 $-S(CH_2)_mC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(O)_2(CH_2)_mC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(O)_2(CH_2)_mC(O)(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(O)_2NR^9(CH_2)_mC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(CH_2)_mC(O)NR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mOC(O)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC(O)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC(NOR^9)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mNR^9S(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)_2NR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mCHOR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mP(O)(OR^9)O(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(O)_2(CH_2)_mCONR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(O)_2(CH_2)_mOC(O)NR^9(CH_2)_nC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$, $-NR^9O(CH_2)_n-$,
 10 $-NR^9NR^{9a}C(O)NR^{9b}(CH_2)_n-$, $-NR^9(CH_2)_mNR^{9a}C(O)(CH_2)_n-$ or $-NR^9(CR^{9c}R^{9d})_n-$.

- wherein R^9 , R^{9a} and R^{9b} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl,
 15 in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-OH$, $-CH_2OH$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-C(O)OH$, $-O$ -lower alkyl, $-C(O)OCH_3$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-OCH_2C(O)NH_2$, $-NH_2$, $-N(CH_3)_2$, $-CH_2N(CH_3)_2$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-OCHF_2$, $-CF_3$ and $-OCF_3$,
 20 R^{9c} and R^{9d} independently are hydrogen or lower alkyl,

- 25 m, n and r independently are 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4,

- A and B independently are hydrogen, halogen, $-CF_3$, $-CF_2CF_3$, $-CN$, $-NO_2$, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, hydroxy,
 30 in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-OH$, $-CH_2OH$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-C(O)OH$, $-O$ -lower alkyl, $-C(O)OCH_3$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-OCH_2C(O)NH_2$, $-NH_2$, $-N(CH_3)_2$, $-CH_2N(CH_3)_2$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-OCHF_2$, $-CF_3$ and $-OCF_3$,

or A and B independently are



wherein

5

p is 1, 2 or 3,

X' is -N= or -CR¹⁴=,

10

Y' is -N= or -CR¹⁶=,

Z' is -N= or -CR¹⁶=,

V' is -N= or -CR¹⁷=,

15

W' is -N= or -CR¹⁸=,

G is -CR^{18a}R^{18b}-, -N⁺O⁻-, -NR¹⁹-, -O- or -S-,

20

K is -CR^{18c}R^{18d}-, -NR²⁰-, -O- or -S-,

R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷, R¹⁸, R^{18a}, R^{18b}, R^{18c} and R^{18d} independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -OCH₂CF₃, -OCF₂CHF₂, -NO₂, -OR²¹, -NR²¹R²², lower alkyl, lower

5686.200-US

alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, $-\text{SCF}_3$, $-\text{SR}^{21}$, $-\text{CHF}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{NR}^{21}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OR}^{21}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^{21}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{22}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}(\text{CH}_2)_6\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{22}$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$ where R^{12} and R^{13} furthermore independently may represent oxo, or two of the groups R^{10} to R^{18d} when defined in the same ring together may form a bridge $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_x\text{O}-$ or $-\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_x\text{O}-$,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{O-lower alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OCH}_3$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$ and $-\text{OCF}_3$,

wherein R^{21} and R^{22} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R^{21} and R^{22} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{O-lower alkyl}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OCH}_3$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$ and $-\text{OCF}_3$,

R^{19} and R^{20} independently are hydrogen, $-\text{OR}^{23}$, $-\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R^{19} and R^{20} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, $-C(O)NR^{23}R^{24}$ or $-C(O)OR^{23}$,
 in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen,
 lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-OH$, $-CH_2OH$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-C(O)OH$, $-O$ -lower alkyl,
 $-C(O)OCH_3$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-OCH_2C(O)NH_2$, $-NH_2$, $-N(CH_3)_2$, $-CH_2N(CH_3)_2$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-OCHF_2$,
 $-CF_3$ and $-OCF_3$,

wherein R^{23} and R^{24} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R^{23} and R^{24} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-OH$, $-CH_2OH$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-C(O)OH$, $-O$ -lower alkyl, $-C(O)OCH_3$, $-C(O)NH_2$, $-OCH_2C(O)NH_2$, $-NH_2$, $-N(CH_3)_2$, $-CH_2N(CH_3)_2$, $-SO_2NH_2$, $-OCHF_2$, $-CF_3$ and $-OCF_3$,

q is 1, 2 or 3,

s is 0, 1, 2 or 3,

or

A and B may be connected and together form a C_{2-3} -alkylene radical,

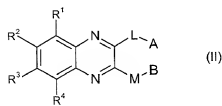
with the provisos that

when L represents a group wherein n or r is 0, A is not halogen, -CN or -NO₂, and

when M represents a group wherein n or r is 0, B is not halogen, -CN or -NO₂,

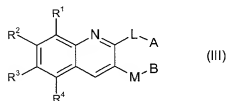
- 5 as well as any optical or geometric isomer or tautomeric form thereof including mixtures of these or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In one embodiment the compounds have the general formula (II):



wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, L, M, A and B are as defined for formula (I).

In another embodiment the compounds have the general formula (III):



wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, L, M, A and B are as defined for formula (I).

- 20 R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are preferably independently hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, -S(O)₂NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)₂R⁵, -C(O)NR⁵R⁶, -SR⁵, -C(O)R⁵ or -C(O)OR⁵, wherein R⁵ and R⁶ are as defined for formula (I).

- 25 More preferably, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are independently hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, -SR⁵, -S(O)₂R⁵, -C(O)OR⁵, -C(O)R⁵, -NO₂ or -C(O)NR⁵R⁶, wherein R⁵ and R⁶ are as defined for formula (I). R⁵ and R⁶ are preferably independently hydrogen, phenyl or lower alkyl, wherein phenyl optionally is substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, 5686.200-US

-O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃.

Even more preferably, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are independently hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃,

- 5 -NO₂, -C(O)phenyl, lower alkyl or lower alkoxy, wherein phenyl optionally is substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃

- 10 Of these R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are preferably independently hydrogen, halogen, -CF₃, -NO₂ or -C(O)phenyl.

In one embodiment three of the groups R¹ to R⁴ are hydrogen and one of them is different from hydrogen. In one preferred embodiment thereof one of R¹ to R⁴ is halogen, especially

- 15 chloro. In another preferred embodiment thereof R³ is -NO₂.

In another embodiment two of the groups R¹ to R⁴ are hydrogen and the other two are different from hydrogen. In one preferred embodiment thereof R¹ and R⁴ are both hydrogen and R² and R³ are both halogen, especially chloro. In another preferred embodiment thereof R¹

- 20 and R⁴ are both hydrogen and R² and R³ are both -NO₂.

L is preferably a valence bond, -(CH₂)_mS(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mCHR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mC(O)(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂NR⁹(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mOC(O)NR⁹(CH₂)_nC(O)O(CH₂)_r- or

- 25 -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mCONR⁹(CH₂)_n-, wherein m, n, r and R⁹ are as defined for formula (I).

More preferably, L is a valence bond, -S-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂C(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂C(O)(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂NH(CH₂)₂C(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)₄OC(O)NH(CH₂)₂C(O)O- or -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂CONH(CH₂)_n-, wherein n is as defined for formula (I).

30

Among these L is preferably a valence bond, -S-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂-, -S(O)₂CH₂-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂C(O)O-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂C(O)(CH₂)₂-, -S(O)₂NH(CH₂)₂C(O)O-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂OC(O)NH(CH₂)₂C(O)O- or -S(O)₂(CH₂)₂CONH(CH₂)₂- and even more preferably L is -S(O)₂CH₂- or -S(O)₂-.

A is preferably lower alkyl, halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, cycloalkyl,

in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{NO}_2$,

- 5 $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OCH}_3$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$ and $-\text{OCF}_3$,

or A is

5686.200-US

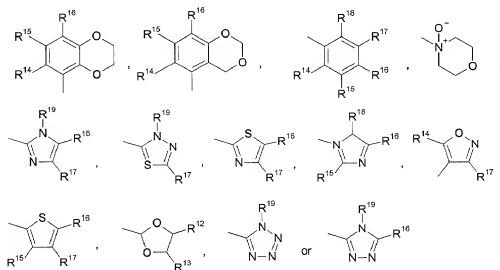


5686.200-US

in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

5

or A is



wherein R¹² to R¹⁹ are as defined for formula (I).

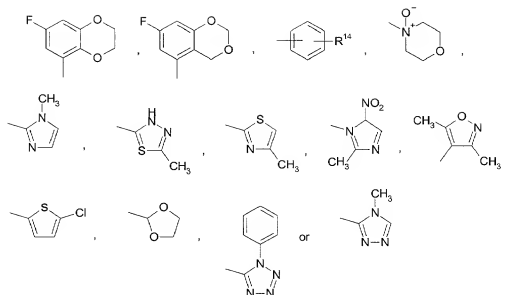
10

Preferably, R¹² and R¹³ are independently selected from hydrogen and lower alkyl, R¹⁴ to R¹⁸ are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl, -NO₂, halogen, -S(O)₂R²¹, -CONR²¹R²², -OCHF₂, -S(O)₂NR²¹(CH)_sC(O)OR²², wherein s is 1 or 2, R²¹ and R²² are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl or pyridyl, and R¹⁹ is hydrogen, lower alkyl or phenyl.

15

Even more preferably, A is lower alkyl, halogen, -CF₃, -OH, cycloalkyl,

or A is



wherein R^{14} is $-S(O)_2CH_3$, $-CONH_2$, $-CONH$ -pyridyl, $-OCHF_2$ or $-S(O)_2NH(CH_2)_2C(O)OCH_3$.

5 In one preferred embodiment thereof A is lower alkyl.

M is preferably a valence bond, $-(CH_2)_mS(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mNR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-NR^9(CR^{9a}R^{9d})_n-$, $-(CH_2)_nC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$, $-NR^9O(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mCH=CH(CH_2)_n-$, $-NR^9NR^{9a}C(O)NR^{9b}(CH_2)_n-$, $-O-$ or $-(CH_2)_mCHR^9(CH_2)_n-$ wherein m, n, R^9 , R^{9a} , R^{9b} , R^{9c} and R^{9d} are as defined for formula (I).

More preferably, M is a valence bond, $-C(O)O-$, $-CH=CH-$, $-N(CH_3)-$, $-CH_2S(O)_2-$, $-NH-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-N(CH_3)O-$, $NHOCH_2-$, $-S-$, $-NHCH_2CH_2NHC(O)-$, $-NHC(CH_3)_2-$, $-CH_2S-$, $-NHCH_2-$, $-NHCH_2CH_2-$, $-O-$ or $-CH_2-$.

Even more preferably, M is a valence bond, $-C(O)O-$, $-CH=CH-$, $-N(CH_3)-$, $-CH_2S(O)_2-$, $-NH-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-N(CH_3)O-$, $NHOCH_2-$, $-S-$, $-NHCH_2CH_2NHC(O)-$ or $-NHC(CH_3)_2-$.

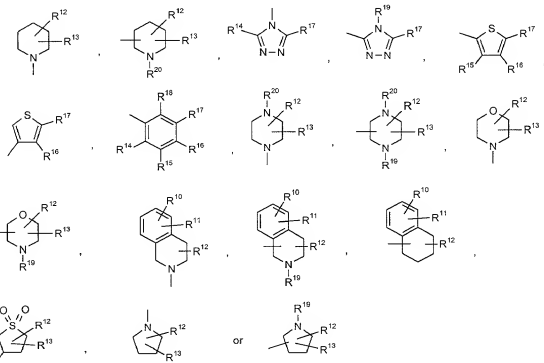
In a preferred embodiment thereof M is a valence bond, $-NH-$ or $-N(CH_3)-$.

B is preferably hydrogen, halogen, $-CF_3$, $-CF_2CF_3$, lower alkyl, cycloalkyl,

in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-OH$, $-CH_2OH$, $-NO_2$,

-CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂,
-CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

or B is



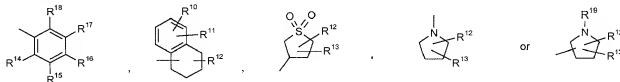
5

wherein R¹² to R²⁰ are as defined for formula (I).

More preferably, B is hydrogen, -CF₃, lower alkyl, cycloalkyl,

- 10 in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

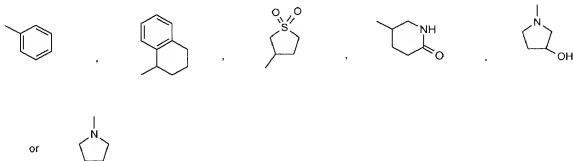
- 15 or B is



wherein R¹⁰ to R¹⁹ are as defined for formula (I).

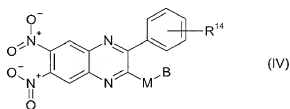
Preferably, R^{10} and R^{11} are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl, halogen, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$ or $-\text{NO}_2$, R^{12} and R^{13} are independently hydrogen, hydroxy or lower alkyl, R^{14} to R^{18} are independently hydrogen, lower alkyl, halogen, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$ or $-\text{NO}_2$, and R^{19} is hydrogen or lower alkyl.

Even more preferably, B is hydrogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, lower alkyl, cycloalkyl,



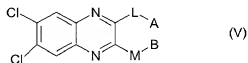
In a preferred embodiment thereof B is $-\text{CF}_3$ or lower alkyl, and especially preferably B is lower alkyl.

In another preferred embodiment the present compounds have the general formula (IV):



wherein M, B and R^{14} are as defined for formula (I) or as defined in any one of the preferred embodiments above.

In another preferred embodiment the present compounds have the general formula (V):



wherein L is $-S(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(O)(CH_2)_n-$ or $-S(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$, and n, A, M and B are as defined for formula (I) or as defined in any one of the preferred embodiments above.

In a preferred embodiment of the above formulae (IV) and (V) M is a valence bond and B is

5 $-CF_3$ or lower alkyl.

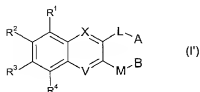
In another preferred embodiment of the above formulae (IV) and (V) M is $-NR^9$, wherein R^9 is hydrogen or lower alkyl and B is lower alkyl or



, wherein R^{14} is hydrogen, lower alkyl, halogen, $-OCF_3$, $-OCHF_2$, $-CF_3$ or $-NO_2$.

10

In a further aspect the present invention relates to a compound of the general formula (I'):



(I')

15 wherein

R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, $-CN$, $-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, $-OR^5$, lower alkyl, $-SR^5$, $-S(O)_2NR^5R^6$, $-S(O)NR^5R^6$, $-S(O)_2R^5$, $-C(O)NR^5R^6$, $-CH_2OR^5$, $-CH_2NR^5R^6$ or $-C(O)OR^5$;

20 wherein R^5 and R^6 independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclidyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclidyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclidyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclidyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R^5 and R^6 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

25

one of X and V is =N-; and the other is =CD- or =N-;

wherein D is hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, -OR⁷, -NR⁷R⁸, lower alkyl, aryl, -C(O)NR⁷R⁸, -CH₂OR⁷, -CH₂NR⁷R⁸ or -C(O)OR⁷;

5

wherein R⁷ and R⁸ independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R⁷ and R⁸ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

15

L and M independently are a valence bond, -(CH₂)_mS(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mO(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mCH=CH(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC≡C(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mCHR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mNR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(O)NR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(CH₂)_mC(O)NR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mOC(O)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(O)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(NOR⁹)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mNR⁹S(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)₂NR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mCHOR⁹(CH₂)_n- or -(CH₂)_mP(O)(OR⁹)O(CH₂)_n-;

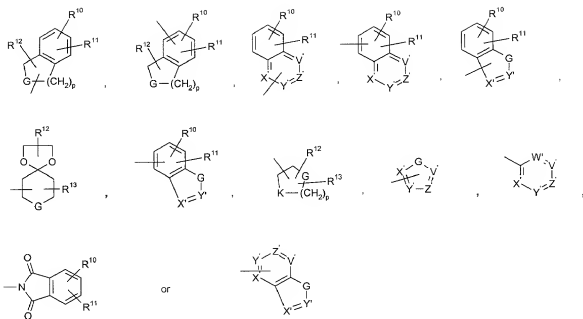
20

wherein R⁹ is hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl;

25

30 m and n independently are 0, 1, 2 or 3;

A and B independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CF₃, -CF₂CF₃, -CN, -NO₂, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl,



wherein

5 p is 1, 2 or 3;

X' is -N= or -CR¹⁴=;

Y' is -N= or -CR¹⁵=;

10

Z' is -N= or -CR¹⁶=;

V' is -N= or -CR¹⁷=;

15

W' is -N= or -CR¹⁸=;

G is -NR¹⁹-, -O- or -S-;

K is -NR²⁰-O- or -S-;

20

R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷ and R¹⁸ independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -OCH₂CF₃, -OCF₂CHF₂, -NO₂, -OR²¹, -NR²¹R²², lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-

5686.200-US

lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, $-\text{SCF}_3$, $-\text{SR}^{21}$, $-\text{CHF}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$,

- 5 $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{NR}^{21}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{R}^{21}$, $-(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OR}^{21}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{21}$ or $-(\text{O})\text{OR}^{21}$, where R^{12} and R^{13} furthermore independently may represent oxo; or two of the groups R^{10} to R^{18} when defined in the same ring together may form a bridge $-\text{OCH}_2\text{O}-$;

- 10 wherein R^{21} and R^{22} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocycl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R^{21} and R^{22} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

- 20 R^{19} and R^{20} independently are hydrogen, $-\text{OR}^{23}$, $-\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocycl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{23}$;

- wherein R^{23} and R^{24} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocycl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R^{23} and R^{24} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing

one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

with the provisos that

5

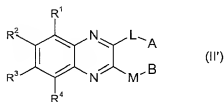
when L represents a group wherein n is 0, A is not halogen, -CN or -NO₂; and

when M represents a group wherein n is 0, B is not halogen, -CN or -NO₂;

10

as well as any optical or geometric isomer or tautomeric form thereof including mixtures of these or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In a preferred embodiment the invention relates to a compound of the general formula (II'):



15

wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, L, M, A and B are as defined for formula (I').

20

Preferably, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are independently hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, -S(O)₂NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)₂R⁵, -C(O)NR⁵R⁶ or -C(O)OR⁵, wherein R⁵ and R⁶ are as defined for formula (I').

In one preferred embodiment, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are independently hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃ or -S(O)₂R⁵, wherein R⁵ is as defined for formula (I').

25

In another preferred embodiment, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are independently hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, lower alkyl, lower alkoxy or -C(O)NR⁵R⁶, wherein R⁵ and R⁶ independently are hydrogen or lower alkyl.

30

Among these, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are preferably independently hydrogen, halogen, -CN, lower alkyl or lower alkoxy.

5686.200-US

In a further preferred embodiment two of the groups R^1 to R^4 are hydrogen and the other two are different from hydrogen.

- 5 Preferably, R^1 and R^4 are both hydrogen and R^2 and R^3 are as defined for formula (I') or as defined in the above preferred embodiments thereof.

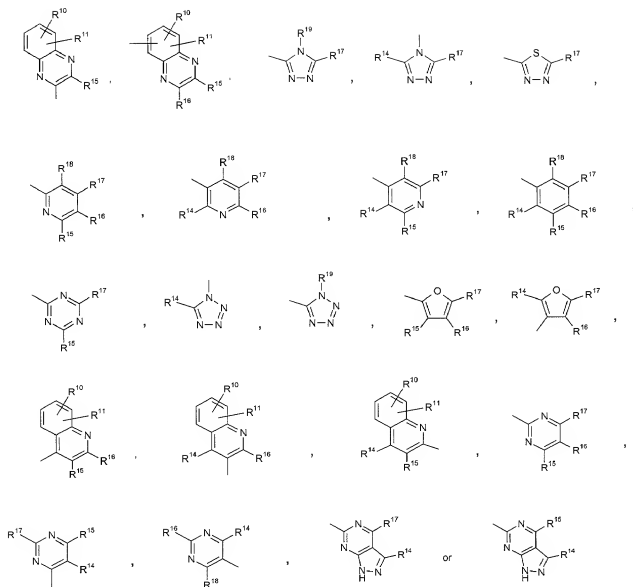
In still a further preferred embodiment R^2 and R^3 are both halogen.

- 10 In a preferred embodiment of the invention L is a valence bond, $-(CH_2)_mS(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$ or $-(CH_2)_mCHR^9(CH_2)_n-$, wherein m, n and R^9 are as defined for formula (I).

Still more preferred L is a valence bond, $-CH_2-$, $-CH_2S-$, $-S-$, $-S(O)-$ or $-S(O)_2-$.

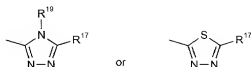
- 15 Even more preferred L is $-S-$, $-S(O)-$ or $-S(O)_2-$.

In a further preferred embodiment A is lower alkyl, halogen,



wherein R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{14} , R^{15} , R^{16} , R^{17} , R^{18} and R^{19} are as defined for formula (I').

- 5 R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{14} , R^{15} , R^{16} , R^{17} , R^{18} and R^{19} are preferably independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, lower alkyl, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{S}-(\text{cycloalkyl-lower alkyl})$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})(\text{cycloalkyl-lower alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{S-lower alkyl}$, $-\text{O-lower alkyl}$, phenyl, furanyl, thienyl, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{O-lower alkyl}$ and $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CH}_3$. R^{19} is preferably lower alkyl or hydrogen.
- 10 More preferred A is lower alkyl,



wherein R^{17} and R^{19} are as defined for formula (I) or in the above preferred embodiments thereof. R^{17} is preferably lower alkyl, $-NH_2$ or $-S$ -lower alkyl and R^{19} is preferably hydrogen.

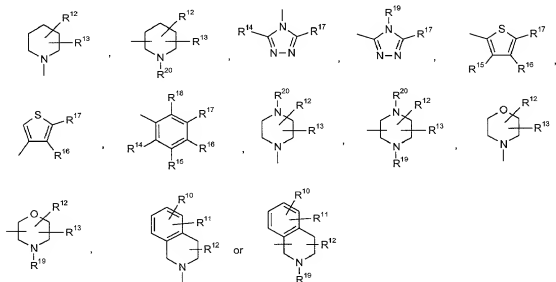
5

In still a preferred embodiment of the invention M is a valence bond, $-(CH_2)_mS(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mCH=CH(CH_2)_n-$ or $-(CH_2)_mCHR^9(CH_2)_n-$ wherein m, n and R^9 are as defined for formula (I').

10 Of these M is preferably a valence bond, $-CH_2S-$, $-CH=CH-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$ or $-CH_2-$.

Even more preferred M is a valence bond.

In yet another preferred embodiment of the invention B is hydrogen, halogen, $-CF_3$, $-CF_2CF_3$,
15 lower alkyl,



wherein R^{10} to R^{20} are as defined for formula (I').

R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} , R^{13} , R^{14} , R^{15} , R^{16} , R^{17} and R^{18} are preferably independently selected from hydro-
20 gen, halogen, lower alkyl, $-NH_2$, $-CF_3$, $-CN$, $-S$ -(cycloalkyl-lower alkyl),

-NHC(O)(cycloalkyl-lower alkyl), -C(O)NH₂, -S-lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl, phenyl, furanyl, thienyl, -NHC(O)O-lower alkyl and -C(O)CH₃. R¹⁹ and R²⁰ are preferably independently selected from lower alkyl and hydrogen.

- 5 More preferred B is -CF₃ or lower alkyl.

In a further aspect the invention relates to a compound of the formula (II') as defined above wherein R² and R³ are both either halogen, -CN or -CF₃, L is -S(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)(CH₂)_n- or -S(O)₂(CH₂)_n- wherein n is 0, 1, 2 or 3, and R¹, R⁴, A, M and B are as defined for formula (I')

10 or as defined in the above preferred embodiments thereof.

In another aspect the invention relates to a compound of the formula (II') as defined above wherein L is -S(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)(CH₂)_n- or -S(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, wherein n is 0, 1, 2 or 3, M is a valence bond, B is -CF₃ or isopropyl, and R¹, R², R³, R⁴ and A are as defined for formula (III')

15 as defined in the above preferred embodiments thereof, with the proviso that when R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are hydrogen, B is isopropyl and L is -SCH₂-, A must not be hydrogen.

In still another aspect the invention relates to a compound of the formula (II') as defined above wherein L is -S(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)(CH₂)_n- or -S(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, wherein n is 0, 1, 2 or 3, at least one of the groups R² and R³ are -CN, and R¹, R⁴, A, M and B are as defined for formula (I')

20 or as defined in the above preferred embodiments thereof.

In still another aspect the invention relates to a compound of the formula (II') as defined above wherein L is -S(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)(CH₂)_n- or -S(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, wherein n is 0, 1, 2 or 3, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ are as defined for formula (I), A is a heterocyclic ring, and

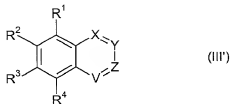
25

M is -CH₂S-, -CH=CH-, -CH₂CH₂- or -CH₂-, and B is as defined for formula (I') above or as defined in the above preferred embodiments thereof, or

- 30 M is a valence bond, and B is -CF₃, -CN, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl or halogen.

In a further aspect the invention relates to a compound of an EC₅₀ value as determined by the method for determining the ability to stimulate cAMP formation in a cell line expressing the

cloned human GLP-1 receptor disclosed herein of less than 25 μM and having the general formula (III'):



wherein

R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{OR}^5$, $-\text{NR}^5\text{R}^6$, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, $-\text{SR}^5$, $-\text{NR}^5\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^6$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^5\text{R}^6$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{NR}^5\text{R}^6$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^5$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^5\text{R}^6$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OR}^5$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NR}^5\text{R}^6$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^5$;

wherein R^5 and R^6 independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R^5 and R^6 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

X , Y , Z and V independently are $=\text{N}-$; $=\text{C}(\text{L}-\text{A})-$; $=\text{C}(\text{M}-\text{B})-$ or $=\text{CD}-$; with the proviso that one of X , Y , Z and V is $=\text{N}-$; one is $=\text{C}(\text{L}-\text{A})-$; one is $=\text{C}(\text{M}-\text{B})-$; and the remaining is $=\text{CD}-$ or $=\text{N}-$;

wherein D is hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{OR}^7$, $-\text{NR}^7\text{R}^8$, lower alkyl, aryl, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^7\text{R}^8$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OR}^7$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NR}^7\text{R}^8$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^7$;

wherein R^7 and R^8 independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower

alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R⁷ and R⁸ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

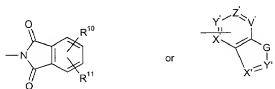
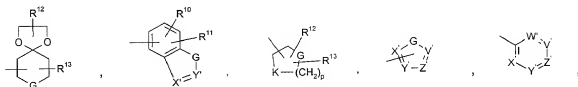
L and M independently are a valence bond, $-(CH_2)_mS(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mO(CH_2)_n-$,

$-(CH_2)_mS(O)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mCH=CH(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC\equiv C(CH_2)_n-$,
 $-(CH_2)_mCHR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mNR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC(O)NR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$,
 $-S(CH_2)_mC(O)O(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(CH_2)_mC(O)NR^9(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mOC(O)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mC(O)(CH_2)_n-$,
 $-(CH_2)_mC(NOR^9)(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mNR^9S(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)_2NR^9(CH_2)_n-$,
 $-(CH_2)_mCHOR^9(CH_2)_n-$ or $-(CH_2)_mP(O)(OR^9)O(CH_2)_n-$;

wherein R⁹ is hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl;

m and n independently are 0, 1, 2 or 3;

A and B independently are hydrogen, halogen, $-CF_3$, $-CF_2CF_3$, $-CN$, $-NO_2$, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl,



5 p is 1, 2 or 3;

Y' is -N= or -CR¹⁵=;

Z' is -N= or -CR¹⁸=:

V' is -N= or -CR¹⁷=;

15 W' is $-N=$ or $-CR^{18}=$;

G is -NR¹⁹-, -O- or -S-;

K is -NR²⁰ -O- or -S-;

20

R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷ and R¹⁸ independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -OCH₂CF₃, -OCF₂CHF₂, -NO₂, -OR²¹, -NR²²R²², lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-5686.200-US

lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, $-\text{SCF}_3$, $-\text{SR}^{21}$, $-\text{CHF}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$,
 5 $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{NR}^{21}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{R}^{21}$, $-(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OR}^{21}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{21}$ or $-(\text{O})\text{OR}^{21}$, where R^{12} and R^{13} furthermore independently may represent oxo; or two of the groups R^{10} to R^{18} when defined in the same ring together may form a bridge $-\text{OCH}_2\text{O}-$;

10 wherein R^{21} and R^{22} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocycl-yl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cy-
 cloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, het-
 15 eroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R^{21} and R^{22} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

20 R^{19} and R^{20} independently are hydrogen, $-\text{OR}^{23}$, $-\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocycl-yl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloal-
 kyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-
 25 lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{23}$;

wherein R^{23} and R^{24} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocycl-yl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cy-
 30 cloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkenyl, heterocycl-yl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, het-
 eroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl; or R^{23} and R^{24} together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing

one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds;

with the provisos that

5

when L represents a group wherein n is 0, A is not halogen, -CF₃, -CN or -NO₂; and

when M represents a group wherein n is 0, B is not halogen, -CF₃, -CN or -NO₂;

10

as well as any optical or geometric isomer or tautomeric form thereof including mixtures of these or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15

The cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl ring systems defined in the above formulae (I'), (II') and (III') may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents, for example selected from the group consisting of halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl such as formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, valeryl, hexanoyl and the like, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -CO₂H, -O-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkyl, -CO₂CH₃, -CONH₂, -OCH₂CONH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃, -OCF₃ and the like. When the ring systems in question are substituted with more than one substituent the substituents may be the same or different. The above ring systems may also be substituted by two substituents forming a bridge, for example -OCH₂O- or -OCH₂CH₂O-.

20

The compounds according to the invention are preferably characterised by having a molecular weight of up to 1000, preferably of up to 600.

25

Preferably, the compounds according to the invention have an EC₅₀ value as determined by the method for determining the ability to stimulate cAMP formation in a cell line expressing the cloned human GLP-1 receptor disclosed in the following of less than 25 μM, such as of less than 10 μM, more preferred of less than 2 μM and even more preferred of less than 1 μM.

30

In a further aspect the invention relates to a non-peptide GLP-1 agonist which activates the human GLP-1 receptor. Agonist activity may eg be determined by the assays described in example 172.

Compounds may also be shown to be active by measuring insulin release from isolated human islets. This can be done according to the method disclosed in Eizirik DL, Korbutt GS, Hellerström C. Prolonged exposure of human pancreatic islets to high glucose concentrations in vitro impairs the beta-cell function. J. Clin. Invest. 90:1263-1268, 1992.

In a preferred embodiment the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist activates the human GLP-1 receptor without competing with GLP-1 in a competition binding assay.

This may be determined by measuring a compound that behaves as an agonist in the assays described in example 172 in a standard receptor binding assay. Plasma membranes may be used prepared as in example 172. Binding assays may be carried out in polypropylene tube. The buffer may be 25 mM HEPES, 0.1% BSA, pH 7.4. GLP-1 and test compounds may be dissolved and diluted as described in Example 172. Tracer (labelled GLP-1) may be prepared as described in (28). Tracer (30.000 cpm) + plasma membrane (0.5-2 µg) may be mixed with test compound and incubated at 37 °C for 1 hour. Non-specific binding may be determined with 10^{-7} M GLP-1. Bound and unbound tracer may be separated by vacuum filtration. The filters can be counted in a γ-scintillation counter. The binding of the tracer in the absence of the test compounds and GLP-1 is set to 100%. A compound which does not compete with GLP-1 in a competition binding assay will not displace the tracer. Therefore, the tracer will display an unchanged binding of 100% in this assay whereas different concentrations of GLP-1 will compete with the tracer resulting in a decreased binding of the tracer in the range of between 0 and up to 100%.

In a further preferred embodiment the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist potentiates the binding of GLP-1 to the human GLP-1 receptor in a competition binding assay.

Such a potentiating effect may be demonstrated eg by the competition binding assay described above. Compounds that potentiate the binding will result in more than 100% tracer bound.

In a preferred embodiment the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist stabilises an active conformation of the human GLP-1 receptor different from the one(s) which GLP-1 stabilises.

This may be determined eg by performing a saturation experiment determining the affinity of GLP-1 with and without the presence of the compound in question. The saturation experiment is a standard receptor pharmacology experiment whereby the true affinity of a compound for a receptor can be measured (32). The protocol for the binding assay described above may be used except for that here the tracer is diluted and two sets of samples are measured, one with 10^{-6} M GLP-1 added (to determine non-specific binding) and one without (to determine total binding). The specific binding (total minus non-specific) is then plotted vs the concentration of tracer added. A curve fitting program (eg the saturation/scatchard template in GraphPad Prism®) may then determine the number of binding sites and the affinity. There may be more than one binding site with different affinities. When such an experiment is performed with GLP-1 one may observe one or two different binding sites dependent on the temperature at which the experiment is performed. It may be shown that the compounds in question stabilise a conformation different from that which GLP-1 normally stabilises by performing the saturation experiment described above in the presence of a high concentration of the compound in question. If the affinity of GLP-1 for the receptor is different when the compound is present, then the compound must stabilise a conformation of the receptor different from the one(s) which GLP-1 normally stabilises. This conformation is then characterised by having a different affinity for GLP-1.

The non-peptide GLP-1 agonists according to the invention may be either partial or full agonists.

In a further preferred embodiment the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist is a partial agonist.

Such partial agonists may be less likely of causing the receptor to desensitise because they do not fully activate the receptor and therefore also do not fully activate the desensitisation signals.

Preferably, the non-peptide partial agonists have an E_{\max} of less than 90%, preferably less than 80% and more preferred in the range of 35 to 75% of that of GLP-1.

This may be determined eg by the assays described in example 172.

However, agonists of an E_{\max} of 90% or more as well as full agonists and agonists having an E_{\max} of more than 100% being efficient at lower dosages may also be usable. Thus, in another preferred embodiment the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist is a full agonist.

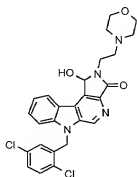
- 5 In still a further preferred embodiment the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist has at least a 10 fold selectivity towards the human GLP-1 receptor compared to the human glucagon receptor and/or the human GIP receptor. This may be determined eg by the assays described in example 172 using cells expressing the human glucagon receptor and/or the human GIP receptor and comparing the formation of cAMP with the amount obtained using the cells
- 10 expressing the human GLP-1 receptor.

In another preferred embodiment the agonistic effect mediated by the non-peptide GLP-1 agonists can be antagonised by a GLP-1 antagonist.

- 15 This may be due to the fact that the non-peptide GLP-1 agonists bind to the same binding site as the GLP-1 antagonist.

An example of such a GLP-1 antagonist is 6-(2,5-dichlorobenzyl)-1-hydroxy-2-[2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]-1,6-dihydropyrrolo[3',4'5,6]pyrido[3,4-b]indol-3(2H)-one.

- 20 6-(2,5-Dichlorobenzyl)-1-hydroxy-2-[2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]-1,6-dihydropyrrolo[3',4'5,6]-pyrido[3,4-b]indol-3(2H)-one may be prepared according to the method below:



- 25 6-(2,5-Dichlorobenzyl)-1-hydroxy-2-[2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]-1,6-dihydropyrrolo[3',4'5,6]-pyrido[3,4-b]indol-3(2H)-one was prepared by a slight modification of a reported procedure

(Dodd et al., *J. Org. Chem.* 1993, 58, 7587): A solution of 9-(2,5-dichlorobenzyl)-*N*-[2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]-9*H*- β -carboline-3-carboxamide (400 mg, 0.83 mmol) in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (12 ml) was stirred and cooled to -78°C under nitrogen. When an internal temperature of -78°C was attained, a 1.0 M methyl lithium in diethylether, cumene solution (4.2 mL, 4.2 mmol) was added by syringe over a period of 0.3 hours. The reaction mixture developed a very dark blue colour after complete addition of methyl lithium. The solution was stirred at -78°C for 2 hours, and the dry ice-acetone bath was then replaced with an ice-water bath. After 0.5 hour, anhydrous DMF (3070 mg, 4.2 mmol) was added dropwise, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for another 15 hours. The solution was cooled to 0°C , and distilled water was slowly added while maintaining the internal temperature of the reaction mixture $0-5^{\circ}\text{C}$. The solution was concentrated to about 10 ml under reduced pressure, excess dichloromethane was added, and the mixture was washed with water. The organic phase was dried (Na_2SO_4), and the solvents were removed *in vacuo*. The resulting crude residue was washed several times with ether. Purification of the crude material by column chromatography on silica with 4% 2M $\text{MH}_3\text{-CH}_3\text{OH}$ in dichloromethane as eluent furnished the lactame (106 mg) as a pale yellow solid. A 241 mg portion (60%) of unreacted starting material was recovered by evaporating combined ether layers and chromatography fractions.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 8.76 (s, 1H), 8.48 (d, $J = 7.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.66 (td, $J = 8.2$ Hz, 0.91 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (t, $J = 7.4$ Hz, 1H), 7.35-7.40 (4-line multiplet, 2H), 7.18 (dd, $J = 8.5$ Hz, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 6.42 (d, $J = 2.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.17 (s, 1H), 5.56 (s, 2H), 4.46 (dt, $J = 9.6$ Hz, 2.7 Hz, 1H), 3.83 (t, $J = 4.3$ Hz, 4H), 3.47 (td, $J = 9.8$ Hz, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 2.78-2.86 (m, 3H), 2.51-2.64 (m, 3H), 1.50-2.30 (v. br. s, 1H).

MS (APCI); $(\text{M} + \text{H})^+$ m/z 511.

In another embodiment of the invention the non-peptide agonists may activate the human receptor both in the absence of GLP-1 and in the presence of GLP-1 but only activate the rat GLP-1 receptor in the presence of GLP-1.

The compounds of the present invention may have one or more asymmetric centres and it is intended that any optical isomers, as separated, pure or partially purified optical isomers or racemic mixtures thereof are included within the scope of the invention.

5686.200-US

Furthermore, when a double bond or a fully or partially saturated ring system is present in the molecule geometric isomers may be formed. It is intended that any geometric isomers, as separated, pure or partially purified geometric isomers or mixtures thereof are included within the scope of the invention. Likewise, molecules having a bond with restricted rotation may form geometric isomers. These are also intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

Furthermore, some of the compounds of the present invention may exist in different tautomeric forms and it is intended that any tautomeric forms which the compounds are able to form are included within the scope of the present invention.

The present invention also encompasses pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the present compounds. Such salts include pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts, pharmaceutically acceptable metal salts, ammonium and alkylated ammonium salts. Acid addition salts include salts of inorganic acids as well as organic acids. Representative examples of suitable inorganic acids include hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, phosphoric, sulfuric, nitric acids and the like. Representative examples of suitable organic acids include formic, acetic, trichloroacetic, trifluoroacetic, propionic, benzoic, cinnamic, citric, fumaric, glycolic, lactic, maleic, malic, malonic, mandelic, oxalic, picric, pyruvic, salicylic, succinic, methane-sulfonic, ethanesulfonic, tartaric, ascorbic, pantoic, bismethylene salicylic, ethanedisulfonic, gluconic, citraconic, aspartic, stearic, palmitic, EDTA, glycolic, p-aminobenzoic, glutamic, benzenesulfonic, p-toluenesulfonic acids and the like. Further examples of pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic or organic acid addition salts include the pharmaceutically acceptable salts listed in J. Pharm. Sci. 1977, 66, 2, which is incorporated herein by reference. Examples of metal salts include lithium, sodium, potassium, magnesium salts and the like. Examples of ammonium and alkylated ammonium salts include ammonium, methylammonium, dimethylammonium, trimethylammonium, ethylammonium, hydroxyethylammonium, diethylammonium, butylammonium, tetramethylammonium salts and the like.

Also intended as pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts are the hydrates which the present compounds are able to form.

The acid addition salts may be obtained as the direct products of compound synthesis. In the alternative, the free base may be dissolved in a suitable solvent containing the appropriate acid, and the salt isolated by evaporating the solvent or otherwise separating the salt and solvent.

5

The compounds of the present invention may form solvates with standard low molecular weight solvents using methods well known to the person skilled in the art. Such solvates are also contemplated as being within the scope of the present invention.

10

The invention also encompasses prodrugs of the present compounds which on administration undergo chemical conversion by metabolic processes before becoming active pharmacological substances. In general, such prodrugs will be functional derivatives of the compounds of the general formula (I) which are readily convertible in vivo into the required compound of the formula (I). Conventional procedures for the selection and preparation of suitable prodrug derivatives are described, for example, in "Design of Prodrugs", ed. H. Bundgaard, Elsevier, 1985.

15

The invention also encompasses active metabolites of the present compounds.

20

The compounds according to the present invention activate the human GLP-1 receptor and are accordingly useful for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders and diseases in which such an activation is beneficial.

25

Accordingly, in a further aspect the invention relates to a compound according to the invention for use as a medicament.

30

The invention also relates to pharmaceutical compositions comprising, as an active ingredient, at least one compound according to the invention together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or excipients.

Furthermore, the invention relates to the use of a compound according to the invention for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment and/or prevention of a disorder or disease wherein an activation of the human GLP-1 receptor is beneficial.

The invention also relates to a method for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders or diseases wherein an activation of the human GLP-1 receptor is beneficial the method comprising administering to a subject in need thereof an effective amount of a compound according to the invention.

5

Owing to the efficiency of the present compounds to activate the human GLP-1 receptor they are useful for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders and diseases, such as metabolic disorders, wherein an activation of the said receptor is beneficial. Accordingly, they may find use in the treatment and/or prevention of hyperglycaemia, dyslipidemia, Type 1 diabetes, Type 2 diabetes, hypertriglyceridemia, syndrome X, insulin resistance, IGT, obesity, diabetes as a consequence of obesity, diabetic dyslipidemia, hyperlipidemia, cardiovascular diseases and hypertension. Furthermore, they may find use in the treatment and/or prevention of appetite regulation and energy expenditure disorders such as eating disorders eg bulimia, and other conditions where a weight reduction is required. They may also find use in the treatment and/or prevention of anxiety, movement disorder, aggression, psychosis, seizures, panic attacks, hysteria or sleep disorders. A further application is for the inhibition of intestinal motility.

15

20

In a preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of hyperglycemia.

In yet a preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the manufacture of a medicament for lowering blood glucose in a mammal.

25

In a preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment and/or prevention of IGT.

In another preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment and/or prevention of Type 2 diabetes.

30

In yet another preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the delaying or prevention of the progression from IGT to Type 2 diabetes.

In yet another preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the delaying or prevention of the progression from non-insulin requiring Type 2 diabetes to insulin requiring Type 2 diabetes.

5

In a further preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment and/or prevention of Type 1 diabetes. Such treatment and/or prevention is normally accompanied by insulin therapy.

10 In a further preferred embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment and/or prevention of obesity.

In still a further embodiment of the invention the present compounds are used for the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment and/or prevention of an appetite regulation or energy expenditure disorder.

15

In a further aspect of the invention the present compounds may be administered in combination with one or more further pharmacologically active substances eg selected from antidiabetics, antiobesity agents, antihypertensive agents and agents for the treatment and/or prevention of complications resulting from or associated with diabetes.

20

Suitable antidiabetics comprise insulin, GLP-1 derivatives such as those disclosed in WO 98/08871 to Novo Nordisk A/S which is incorporated herein by reference as well as orally active hypoglycaemic agents.

25

The orally active hypoglycaemic agents preferably comprise sulphonylureas, biguanides, meglitinides, oxadiazolidinediones, thiazolidinediones, glucosidase inhibitors, glucagon antagonists such as those disclosed in WO 99/01423 to Novo Nordisk A/S and Alanex Corporation, potassium channel openers such as those disclosed in WO 97/26265 and WO 99/03861 to Novo Nordisk A/S which are incorporated herein by reference, insulin sensitizers, DPP-IV inhibitors, inhibitors of hepatic enzymes involved in stimulation of gluconeogenesis and/or glycogenolysis, glucose uptake modulators, compounds modifying the lipid metabolism such as antihyperlipidemic agents and antilipidemic agents, compounds

30

lowering food intake, PPAR and RXR agonists and agents acting on the ATP-dependent potassium channel of the β -cells.

In one embodiment of the invention the present compounds are administered in combination with insulin.

In a further embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with a sulphonylurea eg tolbutamide, glibenclamide, glipizide or glicazide.

In another embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with a biguanide eg metformin.

In yet another embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with a meglitinide eg repaglinide.

In still another embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with a thiazolidinedione eg troglitazone, ciglitazone, pioglitazone, rosiglitazone or the compounds disclosed in WO 97/41097 to Dr. Reddy's Research Foundation, such as 5-[[4-[(3,4-dihydro-3-methyl-4-oxo-2-quinazolinylmethoxy)phenyl]methyl]-2,4-thiazolidinedione.

Furthermore, the present compounds may be administered in combination with the insulin sensitizers disclosed in WO 99/19313 to Dr. Reddy's Research Foundation, such as 3-[4-[2-(phenoxazin-10-yl)ethoxy]phenyl]-2-ethoxypropanoic acid and 3-[4-[2-(phenoxazin-10-yl)ethoxy]phenyl]-2-ethoxypropanoic acid, sodium salt.

In a further embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with an α -glucosidase inhibitor eg miglitol or acarbose.

In another embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with an agent acting on the ATP-dependent potassium channel of the β -cells eg tolbutamide, glibenclamide, glipizide, glicazide or repaglinide.

Furthermore, the present compounds may be administered in combination with nateglinide.

In still another embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with an antihyperlipidemic agent or antilipidemic agent eg cholestyramine, colestipol, clofibrate, gemfibrozil, lovastatin, pravastatin, simvastatin, probucol or dextrothyroxine.

5

In a further embodiment the present compounds are administered in combination with more than one of the above-mentioned compounds eg in combination with a sulphonylurea and metformin, a sulphonylurea and acarbose, repaglinide and metformin, insulin and a sulphonylurea, insulin and metformin, insulin and troglitazone, insulin and lovastatin, etc.

10

Furthermore, the compounds according to the invention may be administered in combination with one or more antiobesity agents or appetite regulating agents.

15

Such agents may be selected from the group consisting of CART agonists, NPY antagonists, MC4 agonists, orexin antagonists, H3 antagonists, TNF agonists, CRF agonists, CRF BP antagonists, urocortin agonists, $\beta 3$ agonists, MSH (melanocyte-stimulating hormone) agonists, MCH (melanocyte-concentrating hormone) antagonists, CCK agonists, serotonin re-uptake inhibitors, mixed serotonin and noradrenergic compounds, 5HT agonists, bombesin agonists, galanin antagonists, growth hormone, growth hormone releasing compounds, TRH agonists, uncoupling protein 2 or 3 modulators, leptin agonists, DA agonists (bromocriptin, dorexin), lipase/amylase inhibitors, PPAR modulators, RXR modulators or TR β agonists.

20

In one embodiment of the invention the antiobesity agent is leptin.

25

In another embodiment the antiobesity agent is dexamphetamine or amphetamine.

In another embodiment the antiobesity agent is fenfluramine or dexfenfluramine.

In still another embodiment the antiobesity agent is sibutramine.

30

In a further embodiment the antiobesity agent is orlistat.

In another embodiment the antiobesity agent is mazindol or phentermine.

Furthermore, the present compounds may be administered in combination with one or more antihypertensive agents. Examples of antihypertensive agents are β -blockers such as alprenolol, atenolol, timolol, pindolol, propranolol and metoprolol, ACE (angiotensin converting enzyme) inhibitors such as benazepril, captopril, enalapril, fosinopril, lisinopril, quinapril and ramipril, calcium channel blockers such as nifedipine, felodipine, nicardipine, isradipine, nimodipine, diltiazem and verapamil, and α -blockers such as doxazosin, urapidil, prazosin and terazosin. Further reference can be made to Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 19th Edition, Gennaro, Ed., Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA, 1995.

It should be understood that any suitable combination of the compounds according to the invention with one or more of the above-mentioned compounds and optionally one or more further pharmacologically active substances are considered to be within the scope of the present invention.

PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS

The compounds of the invention may be administered alone or in combination with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or excipients, in either single or multiple doses. The pharmaceutical compositions according to the invention may be formulated with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents as well as any other known adjuvants and excipients in accordance with conventional techniques such as those disclosed in Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 19th Edition, Gennaro, Ed., Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA, 1995.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be specifically formulated for administration by any suitable route such as the oral, rectal, nasal, pulmonary, topical (including buccal and sublingual), transdermal, intracisternal, intraperitoneal, vaginal and parenteral (including subcutaneous, intramuscular, intrathecal, intravenous and intradermal) route, the oral route being preferred. It will be appreciated that the preferred route will depend on the general condition and age of the subject to be treated, the nature of the condition to be treated and the active ingredient chosen.

Pharmaceutical compositions for oral administration include solid dosage forms such as capsules, tablets, dragees, pills, lozenges, powders and granules. Where appropriate, they

can be prepared with coatings such as enteric coatings or they can be formulated so as to provide controlled release of the active ingredient such as sustained or prolonged release according to methods well-known in the art.

- 5 Liquid dosage forms for oral administration include solutions, emulsions, suspensions, syrups and elixirs.

Pharmaceutical compositions for parenteral administration include sterile aqueous and non-aqueous injectable solutions, dispersions, suspensions or emulsions as well as sterile powders to be reconstituted in sterile injectable solutions or dispersions prior to use. Depot injectable formulations are also contemplated as being within the scope of the present invention.

- 15 Other suitable administration forms include suppositories, sprays, ointments, cremes, gels, inhalants, dermal patches, implants etc.

A typical oral dosage is in the range of from about 0.001 to about 100 mg/kg body weight per day, preferably from about 0.01 to about 50 mg/kg body weight per day, and more preferred from about 0.05 to about 10 mg/kg body weight per day administered in one or more dosages such as 1 to 3 dosages. The exact dosage will depend upon the frequency and mode of administration, the sex, age, weight and general condition of the subject treated, the nature and severity of the condition treated and any concomitant diseases to be treated and other factors evident to those skilled in the art.

- 25 The formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form by methods known to those skilled in the art. A typical unit dosage form for oral administration one or more times per day such as 1 to 3 times per day may contain of from 0.05 to about 1000 mg, preferably from about 0.1 to about 500 mg, and more preferred from about 0.5 mg to about 200 mg.
- 30 For parenteral routes, such as intravenous, intrathecal, intramuscular and similar administration, typically doses are in the order of about half the dose employed for oral administration.

The compounds of this invention are generally utilized as the free substance or as a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof. One example is an acid addition salt of a compound having 5686.200-US

the utility of a free base. When a compound of the formula (I) contains a free base such salts are prepared in a conventional manner by treating a solution or suspension of a free base of the formula (I) with a chemical equivalent of a pharmaceutically acceptable acid, for example, inorganic and organic acids. Representative examples are mentioned above. Physiologically acceptable salts of a compound with a hydroxy group include the anion of said compound in combination with a suitable cation such as sodium or ammonium ion.

For parenteral administration, solutions of the novel compounds of the formula (I) in sterile aqueous solution, aqueous propylene glycol or sesame or peanut oil may be employed. Such aqueous solutions should be suitable buffered if necessary and the liquid diluent first rendered isotonic with sufficient saline or glucose. The aqueous solutions are particularly suitable for intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous and intraperitoneal administration. The sterile aqueous media employed are all readily available by standard techniques known to those skilled in the art.

Suitable pharmaceutical carriers include inert solid diluents or fillers, sterile aqueous solution and various organic solvents. Examples of solid carriers are lactose, terra alba, sucrose, cyclodextrin, talc, gelatine, agar, pectin, acacia, magnesium stearate, stearic acid or lower alkyl ethers of cellulose. Examples of liquid carriers are syrup, peanut oil, olive oil, phospholipids, fatty acids, fatty acid amines, polyoxyethylene or water. Similarly, the carrier or diluent may include any sustained release material known in the art, such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate, alone or mixed with a wax. The pharmaceutical compositions formed by combining the novel compounds of the formula (I) and the pharmaceutically acceptable carriers are then readily administered in a variety of dosage forms suitable for the disclosed routes of administration. The formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form by methods known in the art of pharmacy.

Formulations of the present invention suitable for oral administration may be presented as discrete units such as capsules or tablets, each containing a predetermined amount of the active ingredient, and which may include a suitable excipient. These formulations may be in the form of powder or granules, as a solution or suspension in an aqueous or non-aqueous liquid, or as an oil-in-water or water-in-oil liquid emulsion.

If a solid carrier is used for oral administration, the preparation may be tabletted, placed in a hard gelatine capsule in powder or pellet form or it can be in the form of a troche or lozenge. The amount of solid carrier will vary widely but will usually be from about 25 mg to about 1 g. If a liquid carrier is used, the preparation may be in the form of a syrup, emulsion, soft gelatine capsule or sterile injectable liquid such as an aqueous or non-aqueous liquid suspension or solution.

A typical tablet which may be prepared by conventional tableting techniques may contain:

10	Core:	
	Active compound (as free compound or salt thereof)	5.0 mg
	Lactosum Ph. Eur.	67.8 mg
	Cellulose, microcryst. (Avicel)	31.4 mg
	Amberlite	1.0 mg
15	Magnesii stearas Ph. Eur.	q.s.
	Coating:	
	HPMC approx.	9 mg
	Mywacett 9-40 T* approx.	0.9 mg
20	*Acyalted monoglyceride used as plasticizer for film coating.	

If desired, the pharmaceutical composition of the invention may comprise the compound of the formula (I) in combination with further pharmacologically active substances such as those described in the foregoing.

The present invention is further illustrated by the following representative examples which are, however, not intended to limit the scope of the invention in any way.

EXAMPLES

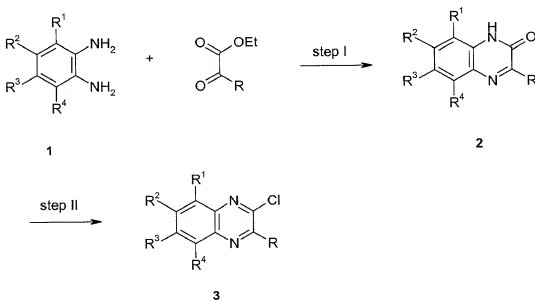
Abbreviations:

APCI: Atmospheric Pressure Chemical Ionisation

- 5 DMF: N,N-dimethylformamide
mCPBA: meta-chloroperoxybenzoic acid

Some of the NMR data shown in the following are only selected data.

- 10 General procedure (A) for the preparation of 3-substituted 2-chloroquinoxalines:



- 15 wherein R¹ to R⁴ are as defined for formula (I) and R represents CF₃, C₁₋₆-alkyl, phenyl, phenyl-C₁₋₆-alkyl or 2-furanyl.

Step 1:

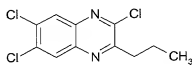
The 1,2-diaminobenzene (1) (30.0 mmol, 1 equiv.) is dissolved in DMF (25 ml). Acetic acid (3.0 ml) is added followed by the appropriate α -ketoester (30.0 mmol, 1 equiv.). The solution is stirred at ambient temperature for 30 min. The reaction volume is reduced to one-third by evaporation *in vacuo*. Water (20 ml) is added, and the resulting suspension is chilled on an ice bath for 20 min. The precipitated 3-substituted quinoxaline-2-one (2) is collected by filtration, and dried *in vacuo* overnight.

Step II:

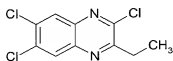
The 3-substituted quinoxaline-2-one (2) (18.0 g, 64.0 mmol) prepared in step I and a catalytic amount of 4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.50 g) is boiled in phosphoryl chloride (130 ml) for 4 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the mixture is poured slowly onto crushed ice (0.5 kg). The precipitate is collected by filtration and dried *in vacuo* overnight to obtain the 3-substituted 2-chloroquinoxaline (3).

The procedure was used for the preparation of the examples 15, 16 and 36-46.

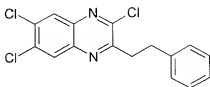
The following compounds prepared by the general procedure. These compounds were used as starting materials for some of the other examples prepared.



¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.0 (t, 3H), 1.81 (m, 2H), 3.05 (t, 2H), 8.05 (s, 1H), 8.12 (s, 1H);
MS (APCI positive): 275.0.



¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.35 (t, 3H), 3.11 (q, 2H), 8.17 (s, 1H), 8.03 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 261.7.



$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 3.2 (t, 2H), 3.5 (t, 2H), 7.3 (s, 5H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H).

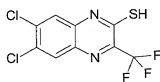
MS (APCI positive): 335.0.

5

Furthermore, the procedure was used for the preparation of some of the other starting materials used in the examples including the starting material for example 91.

General procedure (B) for the synthesis of 3-substituted 2-mercaptoquinoxaline starting materials from 3-substituted 2-chloroquinoxalines illustrated by the preparation of the starting material for example 35:

10

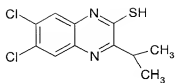


- 15 To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoline (300 mg, 1.0 mmol) in 3 ml of DMF was added $\text{NaSH} \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (92 mg, 1.0 mmol). The solution turned wine-red color and was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. DMF was removed and the residue was added 5 ml of 10% HCl. EtOAc was added to extract the organic phase. Solvent was removed and the residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the corresponding mercapto product as a yellow solid (295 mg).
- 20

$^1\text{H NMR}$ (acetone- d_6): δ 8.2 (s, 1H), 7.8 (s, 1H).

MS APCI (297).

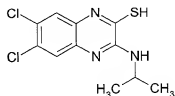
- 25 The procedure was used for the preparation of some of the starting materials used in the examples including the starting materials for the examples 117, 130 and 115.



$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.2 (d, 6H), 4.0 (m, 1H), 7.6 (s, 1H), 8.0 (s, 1H), 14.3 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 273.0.

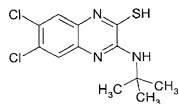
5



$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.8 (d, 6H), 4.43 (m, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 8.32 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 288.0.

10

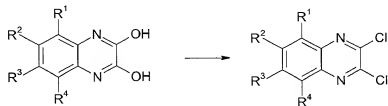


$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ 1.49 (s, 9H), 7.32 (bs, 1H), 7.58 (s, 1H), 7.70 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 302.0.

15

General procedure (C) for the synthesis of 2,3-dichloroquinoxalines from 2,3-dihydroxyquinoxalines:

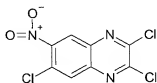


20

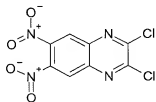
The corresponding 2,3-dihydroxyquinoxaline (4.0 mmol) was suspended in phosphorous oxychloride. About 6 ml of DMF was added to make it homogeneous and the reaction was

heated at reflux overnight. The reaction was quenched by slowly pipetting into ice water. The aqueous mixture was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and concentrated *in vacuo* to a beige solid.

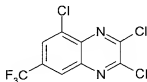
- 5 The procedure was used for the preparation of some of the starting materials used in the examples including the starting materials for the examples 133, 141, 139 and 134.



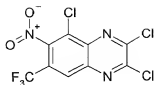
- 10 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 8.18 (s, 1H), 8.45 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI negative): 276.9.



- 15 $^1\text{H NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 8.96 (s, 2H).
MS (APCI positive): 289.9.



- 20 $^1\text{H NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 8.36 (s, 1H), 8.41 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 301.9.



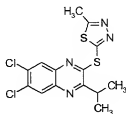
^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 8.34 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 346.9.

5

EXAMPLE 1

6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline



10

To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline (51 mg, 0.18 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was added potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina (80 mg, 0.55 mmol) followed by 2-mercapto-5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazole (26 mg, 0.20 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:5 affording the title compound as a white solid.

15

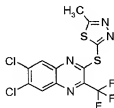
^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.42 (d, 6H), 2.89 (s, 3H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 8.06 (s, 1H), 8.17 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 371.

20

EXAMPLE 2

6,7-Dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline



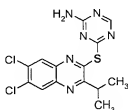
Using the same procedure as described in example 1 the title compound was obtained as a pale yellow solid.

$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 2.92 (s, 3H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 8.31 (s, 1H).

5 MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 397.

EXAMPLE 3

6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(4-amino-1,3,5-triazin-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline



10

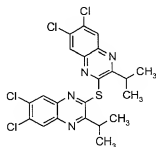
Using the same procedure as described in example 1 the title compound was obtained as a white solid.

15 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.18 (d, 6H), 3.50 (m, 1H), 8.33 (s, 1H), 8.37 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 367.

EXAMPLE 4

Bis-(6,7-dichloro-2-isopropylquinoxalin-3-yl)sulfide



20

To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline (105 mg, 0.38 mmol) in DMF (3 ml) was added sodium hydrosulfide (21 mg, 0.23 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 55-

25 60 °C in an oil bath overnight. The product was purified by a plug filtration through silica gel

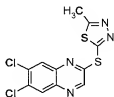
using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:20 followed by preparative thin layer chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:60. Extraction of the product band using chloroform afforded the title compound as a white solid in 20% yield.

- 5 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.40 (d, 12H), 3.53 (m, 2H), 7.86 (s, 2H), 8.20 (s, 2H).
MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 511.

EXAMPLE 5

6,7-Dichloro-2-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline

10

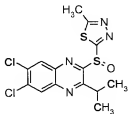


- To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloroquinoxaline (60 mg, 0.26 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was added potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina (112 mg, 0.77 mmol), causing the burgundy solution to turn amber. 2-Mercapto-5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazole (34 mg, 0.26 mmol) was added and the solution became reddish amber. The reaction was capped and stirred at room temperature overnight. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes (1:3) to afford the title compound.
- 15 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 2.89 (s, 3H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 8.78 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 328.9.
- 20 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 2.89 (s, 3H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 8.78 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 328.9.

EXAMPLE 6

6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline

25

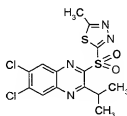


A solution of 6,7-dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (168 mg, 0.45 mmol) prepared as described in example 1 in dichloromethane (6 ml) was stirred in a dry ice/acetone bath at -78 °C while mCPBA (142 mg, 0.45 mmol) was added. After 8.5 hours, the reaction was quenched by addition of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with chloroform. Evaporation of the solvent yielded a pale yellow solid. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:3 to afford the title compound.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.38 (d, 3H), 1.45 (d, 3H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 3.84 (m, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H), 8.36 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 386.9.

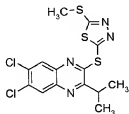
EXAMPLE 7

6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfonyl)quinoxaline



To a solution of 6,7-dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (110 mg, 0.30 mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane was added mCPBA (209 mg, 0.59 mmol). After stirring overnight at room temperature, the reaction was quenched by addition of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate. After separating the layers, the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and concentrated under reduced pressure yielding a yellow solid. Purification by HPLC afforded the title compound as a white solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.48 (d, 6H), 2.99 (s, 3H), 4.21 (m, 1H), 8.01 (s, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 403.

EXAMPLE 8**6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-methylsulfanyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline**

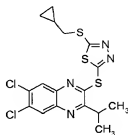
5

To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline (69 mg, 0.25 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was added potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina (109 mg, 0.75 mmol) followed by addition of 2-mercapto-5-methylsulfanyl-1,3,4-thiadiazole (44 mg, 0.26 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:20 to afford the title compound.

10

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.43 (d, 6H), 2.87 (s, 3H), 3.41 (m, 1H), 8.09 (s, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 403.4.

15

EXAMPLE 9**6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-cyclopropylmethylsulfanyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-quinoxaline**

20

To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline (65 mg, 0.23 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was added potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina (103 mg, 0.71 mmol) followed by addition of 2-cyclopropylmethylsulfanyl-5-mercapto-1,3,4-thiadiazole (53 mg, 0.26 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:20 affording the title compound.

25

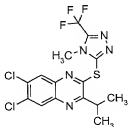
^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 0.39 (m, 2H), 0.68 (m, 2H), 1.31 (m, 1H), 1.43 (d, 6H), 3.37 (m, 3H), 8.10 (s, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 442.9.

5

EXAMPLE 10

6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(4-methyl-5-trifluoromethyl-4H-1,2,4-triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)-quinoxaline



10

To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline (64 mg, 0.23 mmol) in DMF (4 ml) was added potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina (1.1 mg, 0.70 mmol) followed by addition of 3-mercapto-5-trifluoromethyl-1,2,4-triazole (43 mg, 0.24 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. Purification by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:5 afforded 6,7-dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-trifluoromethyl-4H-1,2,4-triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline in 83% yield.

15

To a solution of the above 6,7-dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(5-trifluoromethyl-4H-1,2,4-triazol-3-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (78 mg, 0.19 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) was added triethylamine (0.05 ml, 0.38 mmol) followed by addition of iodomethane (0.02 ml, 0.29 mmol). The reaction was stirred under nitrogen overnight at room temperature. Purification by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:10 afforded the title compound.

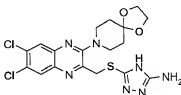
20

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.45 (d, 6H), 3.37 (m, 1H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 7.78 (s, 1H), 8.15 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 422.

25

EXAMPLE 11

5-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(1,4-dioxo-8-azaspiro[4.5]dec-8-yl)quinoxalin-2-yl(methylsulfanyl)-4H-1,2,4-triazol-3-ylamine



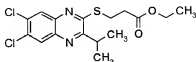
To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-chloromethylquinoxaline (107 mg, 0.38 mmol) in DMF (5 ml) was added 3-amino-5-mercapto-1,2,4-triazole (44 mg, 0.38 mmol) followed by addition of triethylamine (0.05 ml, 0.38 mmol). After 5 hours, potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina (143 mg, 1.1 mmol) was added, followed by 1,4 dioxo-8-aza-spiro[4.5]decane (0.05 ml, 0.42 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. Purification by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate afforded the title compound.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.87 (m, 4H), 3.48 (m, 4H), 3.99 (s, 4H), 4.56 (s, 2H), 7.92 (s, 1H), 7.99 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 468.1.

EXAMPLE 12

3-(6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropylquinoxalin-2-ylsulfanyl)propionic acid ethyl ester



To a solution of 6,7-dichloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline-2-thiol (36 mg, 0.13 mmol) in DMF was added potassium carbonate (55 mg, 0.40 mmol) followed by ethyl 3-bromopropionate (0.02 ml, 0.16 mmol). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. Purification by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:40 afforded the title compound.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.27 (t, 3H), 1.34 (d, 6H), 2.82 (m, 2H), 3.37 (m, 1H), 3.52 (m, 2H), 4.20 (m, 2H), 8.00 (s, 1H), 8.09 (s, 1H).

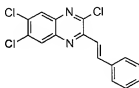
MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 373.

The following examples 13 to 17 are also useful as intermediates for the preparation of further compounds according to the invention.

5

EXAMPLE 13

2,6,7-Trichloro-3-styrylquinoxaline

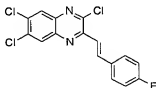


10

This compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Collins, J. L.; Dambek, P. J.; Goldstein, S. W.; Faraci, W. S. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **1992**, 2, 915-8.

EXAMPLE 14

15 2,6,7-Trichloro-3-[2-(4-fluorophenyl)vinyl]quinoxaline



- 6,7-Dichloro-3-methyl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one (5 g, 22 mmol) (prepared as described in: Collins, J. L.; Dambek, P. J.; Goldstein, S. W.; Faraci, W. S. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **1992**, 2, 915-8) was dissolved in a mixture of glacial acetic acid (100 ml) and 98% sulfuric acid (10 ml). 4-Fluorobenzaldehyde (2.3 ml, 22 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at reflux temperature for 3.5 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool to 85°C and then poured onto ice (500 ml). The solid was filtered, washed with water and ethyl acetate and dried *in vacuo* at 30°C overnight to afford 7.2 g (99%) of 6,7-dichloro-3-[2-(4-fluorophenyl)vinyl]-1H-quinoxalin-2-one.

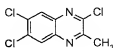
¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.28 (t, 2H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.54 (d, 1H), 7.82 (dd, 2H), 8.00 (s, 1H), 8.07 (s, 1H), 12.6 (br s, 1H).

The above 6,7-dichloro-3-[2-(4-fluorophenyl)vinyl]-1H-quinoxalin-2-one (2.0 g, 6 mmol), 4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.2 g) and phosphorous oxychloride (POCl₃) were mixed and refluxed for 30 minutes. After cooling, the mixture was poured onto ice (500 ml). The solid was filtered, washed with water and dried *in vacuo* at 30°C overnight to afford 1.8 g (83%) of the title compound.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.34 (t, 2H), 7.71 (d, 1H), 7.92 (dd, 2H), 8.05 (d, 1H), 8.40 (s, 1H), 8.45 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 15

2,6,7-Trichloro-3-methylquinoxaline

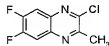


POCl₃ was added to 6,7-Dichloro-3-methyl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one (10 g, 44 mmol) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (1 g) and the mixture was refluxed for 0.5 hours. After cooling, the mixture was poured onto ice (500 ml), filtered and washed with water to afford the title compound.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 2.79 (s, 3H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 16

2-Chloro-6,7-difluoro-3-methylquinoxaline



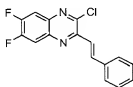
6,7-Difluoro-3-methyl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one (2 g, prepared from 4,5-difluoro-1,2-phenylenediamine and pyruvic acid according to general procedure (A), step I) was mixed with POCl₃

(20 ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (10 mol%) and the mixture was refluxed for 2 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool and poured onto ice (300 ml), filtered and washed with water to afford the title compound.

5 $^1\text{H NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 2.83 (s, 3H), 7.76 (m, 2H)

EXAMPLE 17

2-Chloro-6,7-difluoro-3-styrylquinoxaline



10

6,7-Difluoro-3-methyl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one (2 g, 10.2 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of glacial acetic acid (40 ml) and 98% sulfuric acid (4 ml). Benzaldehyde (1.08 g, 10.2 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at reflux temperature for 3.5 hours. The mixture was allowed to cool to 85 °C and then poured onto ice (400 ml). The solid was filtered, washed with water and ethyl acetate and dried *in vacuo* at 30 °C overnight to afford 2.5 g (88%) of 6,7-difluoro-3-styryl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one.

15

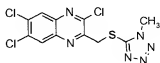
$^1\text{H NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 7.20 (dd, 1H), 7.4 - 7.5 (m, 3H), 7.57 (d, 1H), 7.73 (d, 2H), 7.85 (dd, 1H), 8.04 (d, 1H), 12.6 (s, 1H).

20

The above 6,7-difluoro-3-styryl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one (2.65 g, 0.93 mmol) was mixed with 4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.27 g) and POCl_3 (27 ml) and the mixture was refluxed for 30 minutes. After cooling, the mixture was poured onto ice (400 ml) and the solid was filtered, washed with water (3 x) and dried *in vacuo* overnight. Column chromatography on silica gel, eluting with ethyl acetate:heptane 1:20 afforded 1.6 g (56%) of the title compound.

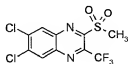
25

$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 7.4-7.5 (m, 3H), 7.65-7.75 (m, 4H), 7.84 (dd, 1H), 8.08 (d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 18**2,6,7-Trichloro-3-(1-methyl-1H-tetrazol-5-ylsulfanylmethyl)quinoxaline**

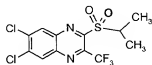
To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-chloromethylquinoxaline (500 mg, 1.78 mmol) in DMF (7 ml) was added 5-mercapto-1-methyltetrazole (206 mg, 1.78 mmol) followed by triethylamine (0.25 ml). The resulting dark reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. Then it was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was separated and concentrated to an oil. The oil was further purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:2) to afford the title compound as a rusty powder.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 3.91 (s, 3H), 4.90 (s, 2H), 8.30 (s, 1H), 8.36 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 360.9.

EXAMPLE 19**6,7-Dichloro-2-methanesulfonyl-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline**

To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline (64 mg, 0.2 mmol) in DMF (1 ml) was added methanesulfinic acid, sodium salt (43 mg, 0.4 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, then it was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was separated and concentrated to an oil. This oil was further purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:3) to yield the title compound as a white solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.54 (s, 3H), 8.40 (s, 1H), 8.48 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive) 344.9.

EXAMPLE 20**6,7-Dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-isopropylsulfonylquinoxaline**

5

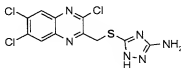
To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline (74 mg, 0.25 mmole) in DMF (1 ml) was added isopropyl mercaptan followed by potassium carbonate. The reaction mixture was left at room temperature for 5 hours. Aqueous work-up afforded the desired sulfide as an oil. The oil was dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (2 ml). To this solution was added mCPBA (0.5 mmol). The reaction mixture was left at room temperature for 3 hours followed by aqueous work-up and column chromatography to yield the title compound as a white solid.

10

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): 1.48 (d, 6H), 4.35 (m, 1H), δ 8.39 (s, 1H), 8.47 (s, 1H).

15

MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 372.9.

EXAMPLE 21**5-(3,6,7-Trichloroquinoxalin-2-ylmethylsulfanyl)-1H-1,2,4-triazol-3-ylamine**

20

2,6,7-Trichloro-3-chloromethylquinoxaline (105 mg, 0.37 mmol) and 3-amino-5-mercapto-1,2,4-triazole (48 mg, 0.41 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (3 ml). Triethylamine (0.2 ml, 1.1 mmol) was added and the dark brown solution was allowed to stand at room temperature overnight. After evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue was taken up in ethyl acetate and water. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were concentrated *in vacuo*, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate to afford the title compound.

25

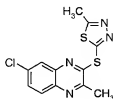
30

^1H NMR (MeOH-d_4): δ 4.61 (s, 2H), 8.17 (s, 2H).

MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 360.9.

EXAMPLE 22

5 6-Chloro-2-methyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfany)quinoxaline



STEP 1:

- 10 Ethyl pyruvate (4.2 ml, 39 mmol) was added to solution of 4-chloro-1,2-phenylenediamine (5.0 g, 35 mmol) in methanol (100 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with methanol and dried to afford 4.95 g (73%) of a 6:4 mixture of 7-chloro-3-methyl-quinoxalin-2(1H)-one and 6-chloro-3-methyl-quinoxalin-2(1H)-one, respectively. A portion of this mixture (2.0 g, 10.28 mmol) was reacted
- 15 with phenylphosphonic dichloride (4.0 g, 20.55 mmol) at 150 °C for 4 hours. The mixture was cooled, water (75 ml) was added and the pH was adjusted to 7 with aqueous ammonia. The precipitate was filtered off and washed with water. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexanes 1:9 affording 2,6-dichloro-3-methylquinoxaline and 3,6-dichloro-2-methylquinoxaline, respectively.

20

2,6-Dichloro-3-methylquinoxaline: Pale red solid M.p. 128-9 °C (Litt. M.p. 128-9 °C; Heterocycles 23(8), 2069-2074, 1985).

3,6-Dichloro-2-methylquinoxaline: Red solid M.p. 124-6 °C. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 2.85 (s, 3H),

- 25 7.69 (dd, 1H), 7.96 (d, 1H), 7.98 (d, 1H).

STEP 2:

- A mixture of 3,6-dichloro-2-methylquinoxaline (43 mg, 0.202 mmol), potassium carbonate (56 mg, 0.404 mmol) and 2-mercapto-5-methylthiadiazole (27 mg, 0.202 mmol) in acetone (3
- 30 ml) was stirred while caesium fluoride (37 mg, 0.242 mmol) and two drops of DMF were added. The mixture was stirred and heated at 50 °C overnight. The cooled mixture was fil-

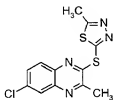
tered through decalite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:toluene 1:9 to afford 29 mg (47%) of the title compound.

- 5 M.p. 194.5-196.5 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 2.78 (s, 3H), 2.86 (s, 3H), 7.86 (dd, 1H), 8.08 (d, 1H), 8.17(d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 23

6-Chloro-3-methyl-2-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline

10



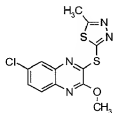
2,6-Dichloro-3-methylquinoxaline was reacted with 2-mercapto-5-methylthiadiazole in analogy with the method outlined in example 22, step 2 to yield 18 mg (42%) of the title compound as a pale red solid.

15

M.p. 189-90 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 2.77 (s, 3H), 2.84 (s, 3H), 7.83 (dd, 1H), 8.07(d, 1H), 8.16 (d, 1H).

20 EXAMPLE 24

6-Chloro-2-methoxy-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline



25 STEP 1:

A suspension of 2,3,6-trichloroquinoxaline (J. Med. Chem. **33**, 2240-54,1990) (5.84 g, 25 mmol) in dry methanol (70 ml) was stirred at 50 °C while methanolic sodium methoxide (30

mmol) (prepared from 0.7 g of sodium and 70 ml of dry methanol) was added over 5 hours. After the addition was complete, heating and stirring was continued for a further 16 hours. The mixture was cooled in an ice bath, the precipitate filtered off, washed with a small amount of methanol and dried to afford 4.28 g of a mixture consisting of 2,3-dimethoxy-6-chloroquinoxaline, 2,6-dichloro-3-methoxyquinoxaline and 3,6-dichloro-2-methoxyquinoxaline, respectively.

A 3 g portion of the latter mixture was purified by flash column chromatography using toluene:hexanes 7:3 as eluent yielding pure 3,6-dichloro-2-methoxyquinoxaline.

M.p. 113-4 °C (methanol). $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 4.18 (s, 3H), 7.54 (dd, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H), 7.89 (d, 1H).

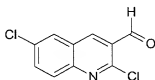
STEP 2:

A mixture of 3,6-dichloro-2-methoxyquinoxaline (50 mg, 0.218 mmol), potassium carbonate (31 mg, 0.224 mmol) and 2-mercapto-5-methylthiadiazole (31 mg, 0.219 mmol) in 3 ml of acetone was stirred while adding caesium fluoride (40 mg, 0.262 mmol) and two drops of DMF. The mixture was stirred and heated at 55 °C for 16 hours. The cooled mixture was filtered and washed with acetone. The organic solution was evaporated and the residue was crystallised from methanol to afford 13 mg (18%) of the title compound as off white crystals.

M.p. 186-8 °C. $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 2.90 (s, 3H), 4.20 (s, 3H), 7.52 (dd, 1H), 7.87 (d, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 25

2,6-Dichloroquinoline-3-carbaldehyde

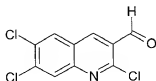


POCl_3 (31.1 g, 210 mmol) was added to DMF (6.5 g, 90 mmol) while keeping the temperature below 5 °C. 4-Chloroacetaniilide (5.07 g, 30 mmol) was added in one portion and the re-

action mixture was heated to 75 °C for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and poured onto ice. The separated crystals were filtered and dried. Yield 220 mg. M.p. 188-190 °C.

5 EXAMPLE 26

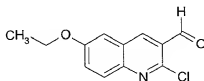
2,6,7-Trichloroquinoline-3-carbaldehyde



- 10 The title compound was prepared by the same method as described in example 25 starting from 3,4-dichloro-acetanilide. M.p. 190-1 °C.

EXAMPLE 27

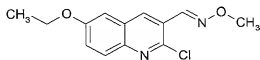
2-Chloro-6-ethoxyquinoline-3-carbaldehyde



The title compound was prepared by the same method as described in example 25 starting from 4-ethoxy-acetanilide. M.p. 163-4 °C.

EXAMPLE 28

2-Chloro-6-ethoxyquinoline-3-carbaldehyde-O-methyl-oxime

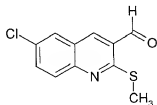


To a solution of 2-chloro-6-ethoxyquinoline-3-carbaldehyde (0.235 g, 1.0 mmol) in ethanol O-methylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.10 g, 1.1 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was

heated to reflux for 0.5 hours. After cooling to room temperature the precipitated compound was filtered and dried. Yield 180 mg. M.p. 142-4 °C.

EXAMPLE 29

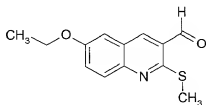
5 6-Chloro-2-methylsulfanylquinoline-3-carbaldehyde



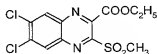
- 10 To a solution of 2,6-dichloroquinoline-3-carbaldehyde (113 mg, 0.5 mmol) in DMF (5 ml) sodium hydrosulfide nona-hydrate (105 mg, 1.5 mmol) and potassium carbonate (250 mg) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and methyl iodide (260 mg, 2.0 mmol) was added. Water was added and the separated compound was filtered off, dried and re-crystallised from ethanol. Yield 70 mg. M.p. 154-5 °C.

15 EXAMPLE 30

6-Ethoxy-2-methylsulfanylquinoline-3-carbaldehyde



- 20 The title compound was prepared as described in example 29 starting from 2-chloro-6-ethoxyquinoline-3-carbaldehyde. M.p. 124-5 °C.

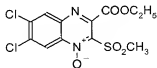
EXAMPLE 31**6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonylquinoxaline-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester**

5

and

EXAMPLE 32**6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonylquinoxaline-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester-N⁴-oxide**

10



15

To a solution of ethyl 3,6,7-trichloroquinoxaliny carboxylate (182 mg, 0.6 mmol) in DMF (2.5 ml) was added NaHS.2H₂O (110.4 mg, 1.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and was partitioned in water and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was concentrated to a red solid. Without further purification, this red solid was re-dissolved in ethyl acetate (3 ml). A large excess of iodomethane (2 ml) was added to the above solution followed by a large excess of triethylamine (2 ml). The red colour instantly became yellowish.

20

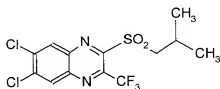
Then, the reaction mixture was washed with water once and concentrated to a yellow oil which was dissolved in dichloromethane (2 ml). To this was added mCPBA (440 mg, 47% pure, 1.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and concentrated to a solid. This solid was purified by column chromatography with ethyl acetate:hexane (1:3) to yield a mixture of examples 31 and 32 in a ratio of 9:1 as a white solid. The two compounds were separated by HPLC.

25

EXAMPLE 31: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.5 (t, 3H), 3.4 (s, 3H), 4.6 (q, 2H), 8.4 (s, 2H); MS (APCI positive) 349.

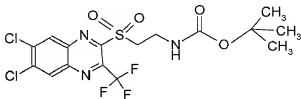
30

EXAMPLE 32: ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.5 (t, 3H), 3.6 (s, 3H), 4.5 (q, 2H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.4 (s, 1H); MS (APCI positive) 365.

EXAMPLE 33**6,7-Dichloro-2-methyl-3-(isobutyl-1-sulfonyl)quinoxaline**

Using the same procedure as described in example 20, the title compound was synthesised as a white powder.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.2 (d, 6H), 2.5 (m, 1H), 3.6 (d, 2H), 8.4 (s, 1H), 8.5 (s, 1H); MS (APCI positive) 387.

EXAMPLE 34***Tert*-butyl 2-([6,7-dichloro-3-(trifluoromethyl)-2-quinoxaliny]sulfonyl)ethylcarbamate**

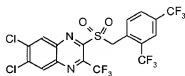
To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline (100 mg, 0.33 mmol) in DMF (3 ml) was added one small scoop of potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina followed by *tert*-butyl N-(2-mercaptoethyl)carbamate (0.06 ml, 0.37 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate. Water was added, the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. After combining and concentrating the organic layers, the crude alkylation product was dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (5 ml), then mCPBA (574 mg, 1.32 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was quenched by addition of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with 1,2-

dichloroethane. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexane 1:5.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.39 (s, 9H), 3.80 (m, 2H), 3.99 (m, 2H), 5.20 (bs, 1H), 8.44 (s, 1H), 8.47 (s, 1H). MS (APCI negative) 472.9.

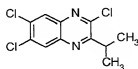
EXAMPLE 35

2-([2,4-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl]sulfonyl)-6,7-dichloro-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline



To a solution of 6,7-dichloro-3-trifluoromethyl-2-mercaptoquinoxaline (35 mg, 0.12 mmol) in DMF (2.5 ml) was added a small scoop of potassium carbonate followed by 2,4-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl bromide (0.04 ml, 0.13 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*, the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and water was added. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were concentrated under reduced pressure to a pale yellow solid. The crude alkylation product was dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane to which was added mCPBA (1.1 g, 1.3 mmol). The oxidation reaction was stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction was quenched by addition of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with 1,2-dichloroethane. The combined organic layers were concentrated under reduced pressure to a pale yellow solid. The product was purified by HPLC.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 5.29 (s, 2H), 7.89 (m, 1H), 8.01 (m, 2H), 8.39 (s, 1H), 8.50 (s, 1H). MS (APCI negative) 555.8.

EXAMPLE 36**2,6,7-Trichloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline**

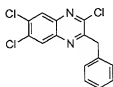
5

The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 3.7 (m, 1H), 1.4 (d, 6H).

MS APCI (275).

10

EXAMPLE 37**2,6,7-Trichloro-3-benzylquinoxaline**

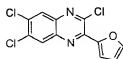
15

The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 8.0 (s, 1H), 7.9 (s, 1H), 7.2 (m, 5H), 4.3 (s, 2H).

MS APCI (323.5).

20

EXAMPLE 38**2,6,7-Trichloro-3-(furan-2-yl)quinoxaline**

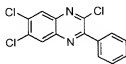
25

The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 8.3 (s, 1H), 8.0 (s, 1H), 7.7 (m, 1H), 7.6 (m, 1H), 6.6 (m, 1H).
MS APCI (301).

EXAMPLE 39

5 2,6,7-Trichloro-3-phenylquinoxaline

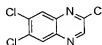


The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 7.8 (m, 2H), 7.5 (m, 3H).
MS APCI (309).

EXAMPLE 40

15 2,6,7-Trichloroquinoxaline

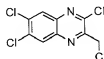


The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 8.7 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.1 (s, 1H).
GCMS (232).

EXAMPLE 41

25 2,6,7-Trichloro-3-chloromethylquinoxaline

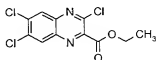


The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 8.6 (s, 1H), 8.5 (s, 1H), 5.1 (s, 2H).

EXAMPLE 42

5 2,6,7-Trichloro-3-ethoxycarbonylquinoxaline



The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

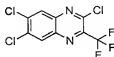
10

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 8.3 (s, 1H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 4.5 (q, 2H), 1.4 (t, 3H).

MS (305.1).

EXAMPLE 43

15 2,6,7-Trichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline



The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

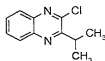
20

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 8.4 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H).

MS APCI (300).

EXAMPLE 44

25 2-Chloro-3-isopropylquinoxaline



The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

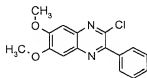
^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 8.1 (d, 1H), 8.0 (d, 1H), 7.8 (m, 2H), 3.7 (m, 1H), 1.5 (d, 6H).

GCMS (204.6).

5

EXAMPLE 45

2-Chloro-6,7-methoxy-3-phenylquinoxaline



10

The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

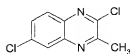
^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 7.9 (m, 2H), 7.5 (m, 3H), 7.4 (s, 1H), 7.3 (s, 1H), 4.1 (d, 6H).

MS APCI (301.6).

15

EXAMPLE 46

2,6-Dichloro-3-methylquinoxaline



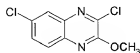
20

The title compound was prepared according to the general procedure (A).

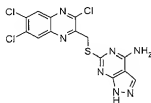
EXAMPLE 47

2,7-Dichloro-3-methoxyquinoxaline

25



The title compound was prepared using the first step of example 24.

EXAMPLE 48**2,6,7-Trichloro-3-[(4-amino-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-3-yl)sulfanyl)methyl]quinoxaline**

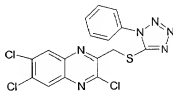
5

The title compound was prepared according to example 18 using 4-amino-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine-6-thiol.

- 10 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 13.27 (b, 1H), 8.43 (s, 1H), 8.42 (s, 1H), 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.50 (b, 2H), 4.87 (s, 2H).
MS (412).

EXAMPLE 49

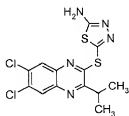
- 15 **2,6,7-Trichloro-3-[(1-phenyl-1H-tetrazol-5-yl)sulfanyl)methyl]quinoxaline**



The title compound was prepared according example 18 using 1-phenyl-1H-tetrazole-5-thiol.

20

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.44 (s, 1H), 8.42 (s, 1H), 7.67 (m, 5H), 5.07 (s, 2H).
MS APCI (423).

EXAMPLE 50**6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-(5-amino-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl)sulfanylquinoxaline**

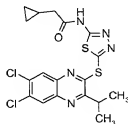
5

The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in example 1.

^1H NMR (MeOH- d_4): δ 8.1 (s, 1H), 7.9 (s, 1H), 3.3 (m, 1H), 1.4 (s, 6H).

MS (372.3).

10

EXAMPLE 51**6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-(5-cyclopropylmethylcarbonylamino-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl)sulfanylquinoxaline**

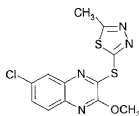
15

The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in example 1.

^1H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 12.7 (b, 1H), 8.1 (s, 1H), 8.0 (s, 1H), 3.45 (m, 1H), 2.05 (m, 1H), 1.5 (d, 6H), 1.2 (m, 2H), 1.0 (m, 2H).

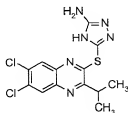
20

MS APCI (440).

EXAMPLE 527-Chloro-3-methoxy-2-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl)sulfanylquinoxaline

5

The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in example 1 using the product of example 47.

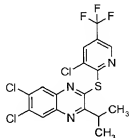
EXAMPLE 5310 6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-(5-amino-1,3,4-triazol-2-yl)sulfanylquinoxaline

The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in example 1.

15

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 12.7 (b, 1H), 8.35 (s, 1H), 8.05 (s, 1H), 6.3 (b, 2H), 3.5 (m, 1H), 1.4 (d, 6H).

MS (355).

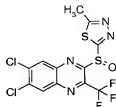
EXAMPLE 54**6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-(3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-pyridyl)sulfanylquinoxaline**

5

The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in example 1.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 8.5 (s, 1H), 8.2 (s, 1H), 8.0 (m, 2H), 3.5 (m, 1H), 1.4 (d, 6H).
MS (452).

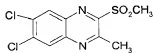
10

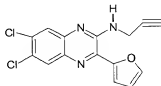
EXAMPLE 55**6,7-Dichloro-3-trifluoromethyl-2-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl)sulfanylquinoxaline**

15

The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in example 6.**EXAMPLE 56****6,7-Dichloro-3-methyl-2-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline**

20

The title compound was prepared using the procedure described in example 19.

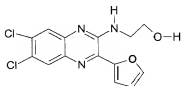
EXAMPLE 57**(6,7-Dichloro-3-(2-furanyl)quinoxalin-2-yl)-2-propynylamine**

5

To a mixture of the compound prepared in example 38 (1.0 mmol) and propargylamine (1.0 mmol) in 4 ml of DMF was added caesium carbonate. The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the oily residue was purified by column chromatography to afford the title compound.

10

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.07 (s, 1H), 8.05 (s, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 7.79 (t, 1H), 7.41 (d, 1H), 6.83 (m, 1H), 4.31 (m, 2H), 3.08 (s, 1H); MS (318).

EXAMPLE 58**(6,7-Dichloro-3-(2-furanyl)quinoxalin-2-yl)-2-hydroxyethylamine**

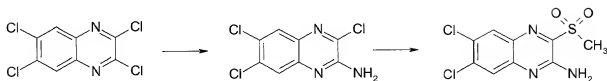
20

The compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for example 57 using ethanol amine instead of propargylamine.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.06 (s, 1H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 7.80 (s, 1H), 7.43 (d, 2H), 6.82 (m, 1H), 4.91 (b, 1H), 3.66 (m, 4H).

MS APCI (324).

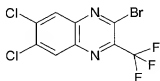
25

EXAMPLE 59**(6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonylquinoxalin-2-yl)amine**

Dry ammonia gas was bubbled through a solution of tetrachloroquinoxaline (260 mg, 0.97 mmol) in dry DMF (20 ml), while stirring at 0 °C. After 20 minutes, the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and bubbling was continued for an additional 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was then concentrated to dryness *in vacuo*. To a suspension of the resulting 2,6,7-trichloro-3-aminoquinoxaline in DMF was added methanesulfinic acid sodium salt (230 mg, 2.2 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. After removing the solvent *in vacuo*, the residue was taken up in ethyl acetate and water. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and evaporated *in vacuo*. (6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonylquinoxalin-2-yl)-amine was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexane 1:3 to obtain a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.43 (s, 3H), 6.14 (brd s, 2H), 7.81 (s, 1H), 8.05 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 291.9.

EXAMPLE 60**2-Bromo-6,7-dichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline**

6,7-Dichloro-3-trifluoromethyl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one (500 mg, 1.8 mmol) was dissolved in phosphorus tribromide (2.0 ml), and the solution was heated at 140 °C for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, before it was poured out on ice (100 g) and extracted with dichloromethane. The organic phase was separated and dried with anhydrous

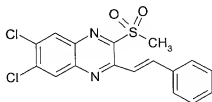
sodium sulphate, then taken to dryness by rotary evaporation to leave a pale brown powder. Further purification using column chromatography and ethyl acetate:heptane (1:1) as eluent gave the title compound as a white powder. Yield: 295 mg (47%).

5 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 8.25 (s, 1H); 8.35 (s, 1H).

Anal. (calc. %; found %): C (31.25; 31.32); H (0.58; 0.61); N (8.10; 7.67).

EXAMPLE 61

6,7-Dichloro-2-methylsulfonyl-3-styrylquinoxaline



Using the same procedure as for the synthesis of example 19, the title compound was synthesised as a yellowish solid.

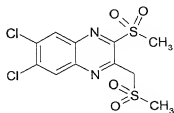
15

$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 3.54 (s, 3H), 7.42 (m, 3H), 7.72 (m, 2H), 8.05 (d, 1H), 8.20 (d, 1H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 379.

20 EXAMPLE 62

6,7-Dichloro-2-methylsulfonyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)methyl-quinoxaline

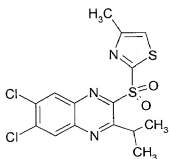


To a solution of 3-chloromethyl-2,6,7-trichloroquinoxaline (150 mg, 0.53 mmol) in DMF (3 ml) was added methanesulfonic acid, sodium salt (120 mg, 1.06 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was removed and the residue was purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:hexane 1:2) to afford the title compound as a white solid.

^1H NMR (CD_3CN) δ 3.14 (s, 3H), 3.47 (s, 3H), 5.30 (s, 2H), 8.30 (s, 2H).
MS (APCI positive) 369.

10 EXAMPLE 63

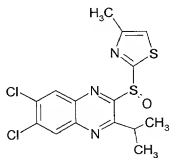
6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(4-methylthiazol-2-ylsulfonyl)quinoxaline



15 and

EXAMPLE 64

6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(4-methylthiazol-2-ylsulfinyl)quinoxaline



20

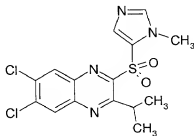
To a solution of 3-isopropyl-2,6,7-trichloroquinoxaline (100 mg, 0.364 mmol) in DMF (3 ml) was added 4-methylthiazole-2-thiol (45 mg, 0.38 mmol) followed by potassium carbonate (106 mg, 0.728 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 5 hours, the reaction mixture was partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate one more time. The combined organic layers were concentrated to dryness. This residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (3 ml). To this solution was added mCPBA (157 mg, 0.73 mmol, 79% pure). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction was quenched by addition of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate. After separating the layers, the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and concentrated under reduced pressure yielding a white solid. This solid was further purified by column chromatography affording two components as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 63: ^1H NMR (CD_3CN) δ 1.38 (d, 6H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 7.71 (s, 1H), 8.11 (s, 1H), 8.27 (s, 1H). MS (APCI positive) 402.

EXAMPLE 64: ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.37 (d, 3H), 1.39 (d, 3H), 2.42 (s, 3H), 3.91 (m, 1H), 7.19 (s, 1H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 8.37 (s, 1H). MS (APCI positive) 386.

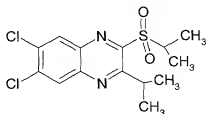
EXAMPLE 65

6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-ylsulfonyl)quinoxaline



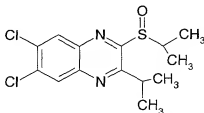
Using the same procedure as outlined in example 63, the title compound was obtained as a white solid.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.45 (d, 6H), 4.02 (s, 3H), 4.24 (m, 1H), 7.22 (s, 1H), 7.30 (s, 1H), 7.94 (s, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H). MS (APCI positive) 385.

EXAMPLE 66**6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(isopropyl-2-sulfonyl)quinoxaline**

5

and

EXAMPLE 67**6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(isopropylsulfinyl)quinoxaline**

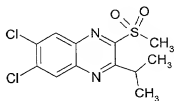
10

Using the same procedure as for the synthesis of examples 63 and 64, the title compounds were synthesised as white solids.

15 **EXAMPLE 66:** ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.43 (d, 6H), 1.51 (d, 6H), 4.20 (m, 1H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H). MS (APCI positive) 347.

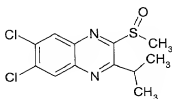
EXAMPLE 67: ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.25 (d, 3H), 1.41 (m, 9H), 3.48 (m, 1H), 3.72 (m, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 8.35 (s, 1H). MS (APCI positive) 331.

20

EXAMPLE 68**6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline**

5

and

EXAMPLE 69**6,7-Dichloro-2-isopropyl-3-(methylsulfinyl)quinoxaline**

10

15

20

To a solution of 3-isopropyl-6,7-dichloroquinoxaline-2-thiol (110 mg, 0.40 mmol) in DMF (5 ml) was added iodomethane (0.5 ml, large excess) followed by potassium carbonate. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 min. The solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated and concentrated to dryness. The residue was re-dissolved in dichloromethane (5 ml) and mCPBA (215 mg, 0.6 mmol, 47% pure) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The reaction was quenched by addition of a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate. After separating the layers, the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were concentrated under reduced pressure yielding a white solid. The solid was further purified by column chromatography affording two components as a white solid.

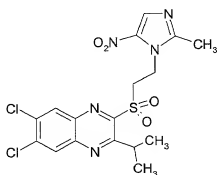
25

EXAMPLE 68: ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.43 (d, 6H), 3.51 (s, 3H), 4.10 (m, 1H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H); MS (APCI positive) 319.

EXAMPLE 69: ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.41 (d, 3H), 1.45 (d, 3H), 3.01 (s, 3H), 3.75 (m, 1H), 8.27 (s, 1H), 8.34 (s, 1H); MS (APCI positive) 303.

5 EXAMPLE 70

6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny-2-(2-methyl-5-nitro-1H-imidazol-1-yl)ethyl sulfone



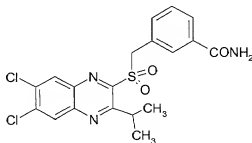
- 10 Using the same procedure as for the synthesis of example 68, the title compound was synthesised as pale yellow solids.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.35 (d, 6H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 3.96 (m, 1H), 4.16 (t, 2H), 4.96 (t, 2H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 8.20 (s, 1H).

- 15 MS (APCI positive) 458.

EXAMPLE 71

3-[[[(6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)sulfonyl]methyl]benzamide



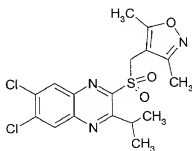
The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 68.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.36 (d, 6H), 4.04 (m, 1H), 5.04 (s, 2H), 7.47 (s, 1H), 7.72 (m, 2H), 8.08 (s, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 8.34 (s, 1H).

5 MS (APCI positive) 438.

EXAMPLE 72

6,7-Dichloro-2-(((3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)methyl)sulfonyl)-3-isopropylquinoxaline



10

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 68.

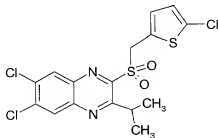
¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.40 (d, 6H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 2.47 (s, 3H), 4.04 (m, 1H), 4.78 (s, 2H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 8.29 (s, 1H).

15

MS (APCI positive) 414.

EXAMPLE 73

6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-(5-chloro-2-thienyl)methyl)quinoxaline



20

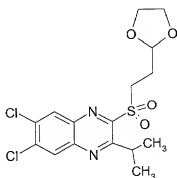
The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 68.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.38 (d, 6H), 4.04 (m, 1H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 6.81 (d, 1H), 7.01 (d, 1H), 8.2 (s, 2H).

5 MS (APCI positive) 435.



EXAMPLE 74

6,7-Dichloro-2-[(2-(1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)ethyl)sulfonyl]-3-isopropylquinoxaline

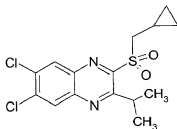
5

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 68.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.42 (d, 6H), 2.37 (m, 2H), 3.85 (t, 2H), 3.92 (m, 2H), 4.03 (m, 2H), 4.11 (m, 1H), 5.12 (t, 1H), 6.81 (d, 1H), 7.01 (d, 1H), 8.20 (s, 2H), 8.26 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI positive) 405.

EXAMPLE 75

6,7-Dichloro-2-[(cyclopropylmethyl)sulfonyl]-3-isopropylquinoxaline

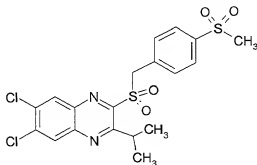
15

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 68.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.51 (m, 2H), 0.73 (m, 2H), 1.32 (m, 1H), 1.43 (d, 6H), 3.66 (s, 2H), 4.17 (m, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H).

20

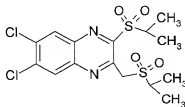
MS (APCI positive) 359.

EXAMPLE 76**6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-[4-(methylsulfonyl)benzylsulfonyl]quinoxaline**

- 5 The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 68.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 1.27 (d, 6H), 3.19 (s, 3H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 5.38 (s, 2H), 7.80 (d, 2H), 7.91 (d, 2H), 8.51 (s, 1H), 8.67 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 473.

EXAMPLE 77**6,7-Dichloro-2-(isopropylsulfonyl)-3-[(isopropylsulfonyl)methyl]quinoxaline**

15 To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-chloromethylquinoxaline (0.88 mmol) in DMF was added potassium carbonate (1.76 mmol) and 2-isopropylthiol (1.76 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, followed by partitioning between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to yield a

20 brown oil upon column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90) (46% yield). The resulting oil was then dissolved in dichloromethane, followed by addition of mCPBA (4 equivalents). The resulting solution was stirred at room temperature overnight, followed by addition of saturated potassium carbonate. The organic layer was dried and concentrated to

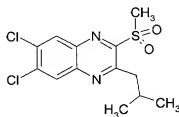
yield a crude solid which upon purification by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 20:80) yielded the title compound as a white solid.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.37 (d, 6H), 1.41 (d, 6H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 5.21 (s, 2H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 425.0.

EXAMPLE 78

6,7-Dichloro-2-isobutyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline

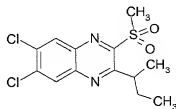


The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 19.

A white solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 0.94 (d, 6H), 2.43 (m, 1H), 3.20 (d, 2H), 3.41 (s, 3H), 8.17 (s, 1H), 8.12 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 333.0.

EXAMPLE 79**2-(Sec-butyl)-6,7-dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline**

5

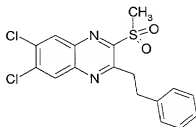
The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 19.

A pale yellow solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90).

- 10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.81 (t, 3H), 1.30 (d, 3H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.96 (m, 1H), 3.41 (s, 3H), 3.79 (m, 1H), 8.11 (s, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive) 333.0.

EXAMPLE 80

- 15 **6,7-Dichloro-2-(methylsulfonyl)-3-phenethylquinoxaline**

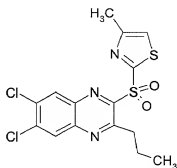


The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 19.

- 20 An off-white solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.16 (t, 2H), 3.41 (s, 3H), 3.64 (t, 2H), 7.15 (m, 2H), 7.24 (m, 3H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H).

- 25 MS (APCI positive) 381.0.

EXAMPLE 81**6,7-Dichloro-3-propyl-2-(4-methylthiazol-2-ylsulfonyl)quinoxaline**

5

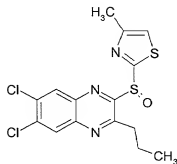
The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 7. A white solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90).

10

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.01 (t, 3H), 1.89 (m, 2H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 3.41 (t, 2H), 7.37 (s, 1H), 7.93 (s, 1H), 8.14 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 402.0.

15

EXAMPLE 82**6,7-Dichloro-3-propyl-2-(4-methylthiazol-2-ylsulfinyl)quinoxaline**

20

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 6.

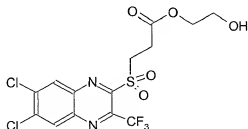
A white solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90 - 30:70).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.94 (t, 3H), 1.79 (m, 2H), 2.29 (s, 3H), 3.15 (m, 2H), 7.09 (s, 1H), 8.07 (s, 1H), 8.22 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 386.0.

EXAMPLE 83

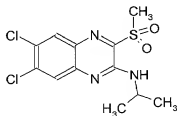
2-Hydroxyethyl 3-([6,7-dichloro-3-(trifluoromethyl)-2-quinoxaliny]sulfonyl)propanoate



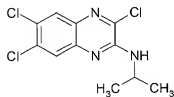
The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 7. The sulfide was prepared as described in example 12 and oxidised with mCPBA. A white solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 30:70).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.98 (t, 2H), 3.78 (t, 2H), 4.05 (t, 2H), 4.20 (t, 2H), 8.34 (s, 1H), 8.41 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 446.9.

EXAMPLE 84**N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-N-isopropylamine**

5

STEP 1:

- 10 To a solution of 2,3,6,7-tetrachloroquinoxaline (2.12 mmol) in DMF was added caesium carbonate (2.34 mmol) and isopropyl amine (2.12 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight, followed by partitioning between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to yield a white solid which was purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90).

15

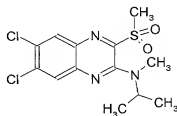
¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.23 (d, 6H), 4.31 (m, 1H), 5.44 (bs, 1H), 7.80 (s, 1H), 7.82 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 289.9.

STEP 2:

- 20 The title compound was then prepared from the compound prepared in step 1 using the same procedure as described in example 19. 41% yield of a yellow solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.25 (d, 6H), 3.34 (s, 3H), 4.30 (m, 1H), 6.76 (bs, 1H), 7.75 (s, 1H), 7.88 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive) 334.0.

25

EXAMPLE 85N-(6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny)-N-methyl-N-isopropylamine

5

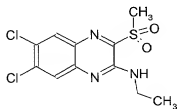
The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 84. A pale yellow solid was isolated and purified by column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 10:90).

- 10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.20 (d, 6H), 3.06 (s, 3H), 3.29 (s, 3H), 4.72 (m, 1H), 7.73 (s, 1H), 7.85 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 348.

EXAMPLE 86

- 15 N-(6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny)-N-ethylamine



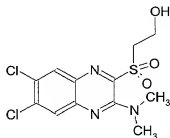
- 20 Using the same procedure as described in example 84, the title compound was obtained as a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.33 (t, 3H), 3.42 (s, 3H), 3.60 (m, 2H), 6.34 (s, 1H), 7.84 (s, 1H), 7.97 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 319.9.

5686.200-US

EXAMPLE 87

2-[[6,7-Dichloro-3-(dimethylamino)-2-quinoxaliny]sulfonyl]ethanol

5

To a solution of 2,3,6,7-tetrachloroquinoxaline (330 mg, 1.2 mmol) in DMF (125 ml) was added potassium fluoride 40% wt on alumina (692 mg, 4.7 mmol) followed by 2-mercaptoethanol (102 mg, 1.3 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for three days. Analysis by MS (APCI positive) showed that the reaction mixture contained mainly 2-alkylated and 2,3-dialkylated products. The reaction mixture was heated overnight in an oil bath (95 °C). The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue was fractionated by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate:hexane 1:5 to 1:0) to afford 2-[[6,7-dichloro-3-(dimethylamino)-2-quinoxaliny]sulfonyl]-1-ethanol. This compound (72 mg, 0.2 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (6 ml) and 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (104 mg, 0.47 mmol) was added. After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour, the reaction was quenched by addition of sodium bicarbonate and water, then extracted with dichloromethane. The title compound was obtained as a yellow oil after purification by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate:hexane 1:3).

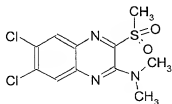
20

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.34 (s, 6H), 3.93 (m, 2H), 4.10 (m, 2H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 350.0.

EXAMPLE 88

N-{6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny}-N,N-dimethylamine



5

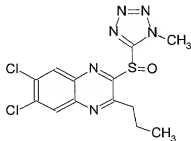
Using the same procedure as described in example 84, the title compound was obtained as a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.34 (s, 6H), 3.40 (s, 3H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI positive) 320.0.

EXAMPLE 89

6,7-Dichloro-2-[(1-methyl-1H-tetrazol-5-yl)sulfinyl]-3-propylquinoxaline

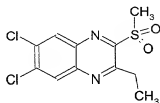


15

Using the same procedure as described in example 6, the title compound was obtained as a pale yellow solid.

20 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.10 (t, 3H), 1.96 (m, 2H), 3.25 (m, 2H), 4.49 (s, 3H), 8.23 (s, 1H), 8.27 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 371.0.

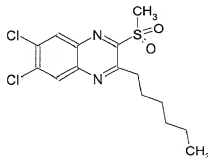
EXAMPLE 90**6,7-Dichloro-3-ethyl-2-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline**

5

The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described for the preparation of examples 15 and 19.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.47 (t, 3H), 3.48 (m, 2H), 3.50 (s, 3H), 8.21 (s, 1H), 8.27 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI positive) 305.0.

EXAMPLE 91**6,7-Dichloro-2-(methylsulfonyl)-3-hexylquinoxaline**

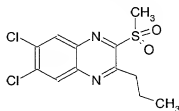
15

The title compound was obtained as an oil using the same procedure as described for the preparation of examples 15 and 19.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.89 (m, 3H), 1.35 (m, 4H), 1.46 (m, 2H), 1.92 (m, 2H), 3.40 (t, 2H), 3.50 (s, 3H), 8.21 (s, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H).

20

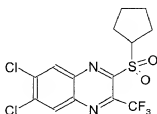
MS (APCI positive) 361.0.

EXAMPLE 92**6,7-Dichloro-2-(methylsulfonyl)-3-propylquinoxaline**

- 5 The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described for the preparation of examples 15 and 19.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.09 (t, 3H), 1.95 (m, 2H), 3.38 (t, 2H), 3.50 (s, 3H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 8.24 (s, 1H).

- 10 MS (APCI positive) 319.0.

EXAMPLE 93**6,7-Dichloro-2-(cyclopentylsulfonyl)-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline**

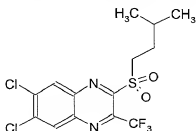
15

The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described in example 34.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.74 (m, 2H), 1.89 (m, 2H), 2.14 (m, 4H), 4.55 (m, 1H), 8.37 (s, 1H), 8.46 (s, 1H).

20

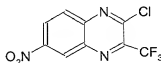
MS (APCI negative) 397.9.

EXAMPLE 94**6,7-Dichloro-2-(isopentylsulfonyl)-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline**

- 5 The title compound was obtained as a white solid using the same procedure as described in example 34.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.01 (d, 6H), 1.81 (m, 3H), 3.74 (m, 2H), 8.37 (s, 1H), 8.47 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive) 401.0.

10

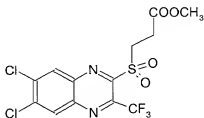
EXAMPLE 95**2-Chloro-6-nitro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline**

15

The title compound was obtained as an amber oil using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 15.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 8.30 (bd, 1H), 8.74 (bq, 1H), 9.14 (d, 1H).
MS (APCI negative) 276.9.

20

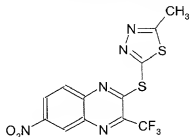
EXAMPLE 963-(6,7-Dichloro-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline-2-sulfonyl)propionic acid methyl ester

5

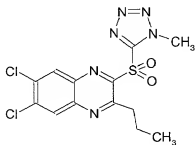
The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described in example 34.¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.84 (t, 2H), 3.50 (s, 3H), 3.98 (t, 2H), 8.69 (s, 1H), 8.72 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 417.0.

10

EXAMPLE 972-[(5-Methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl)sulfonyl]-6-nitro-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline15 The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described for example 1.¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.91 (s, 3H), 8.23 (d, 1H), 8.73 (bq, 1H), 9.07 (d, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 374.0.

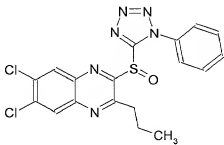
EXAMPLE 98**6,7-Dichloro-2-[(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-3-propylquinoxaline**

5

The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described in example 34.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.14 (t, 3H), 2.02 (m, 2H), 3.47 (t, 2H), 4.44 (s, 3H), 7.93 (s, 1H), 8.29 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI positive) 387.0.

EXAMPLE 99**6,7-Dichloro-2-[(1-phenyltetrazol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-3-propylquinoxaline**

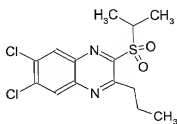
15

The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described in example 34.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.07 (t, 3H), 1.75 (m, 2H), 3.05 (m, 2H), 7.46 (brd m, 3H), 7.57 (brd m, 2H), 7.74 (s, 1H), 8.53 (s, 1H).

20

MS (APCI positive) 433.0.

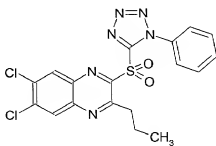
EXAMPLE 100**6,7-Dichloro-2-(isopropylsulfonyl)-3-propylquinoxaline**

5

The title compound was obtained using the same procedure as described in example 34.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.09 (t, 3H), 1.52 (d, 6H), 1.94 (m, 2H), 3.40 (t, 2H), 4.37 (m, 1H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 8.24 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI positive) 347.0.

EXAMPLE 101**6,7-Dichloro-2-[(1-phenyltetrazol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-3-propylquinoxaline**

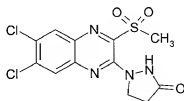
15

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described in example 34.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.07 (t, 3H), 1.94 (m, 2H), 3.35 (t, 2H), 7.62-7.48 (brd m, 5H), 7.97 (s, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H).

20

MS (APCI positive) 449.0.

EXAMPLE 102**N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]pyrazolidin-3-one**

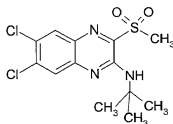
5

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 84.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.71 (t, 2H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 4.50 (t, 2H), 7.26 (bs, 1H), 7.90 (s, 1H), 8.03 (s, 1H).

10

MS (APCI positive) 334.0.

EXAMPLE 103**N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-N-*tert*-butylamine**

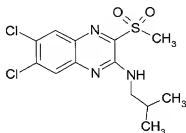
15

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 84.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.54 (s, 9H), 3.40 (s, 3H), 6.95 (bs, 1H), 7.81 (s, 1H), 7.92 (s, 1H).

20

MS (APCI positive) 348.0.

EXAMPLE 104**N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-N-isobutylamine**

5

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 84.

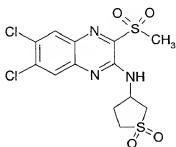
¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.02 (d, 6H), 2.01 (m, 1H), 3.39 (d, 2H), 3.42 (s, 3H), 7.05 (bs, 1H), 7.82 (s, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H).

10

MS (APCI positive) 348.0.

EXAMPLE 105**N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-N-(1,1-dioxo-tetrahydro-thiophen-3-yl)amine**

15

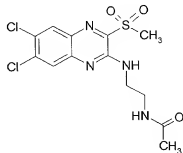


The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 84.

20

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.73 (m, 1H), 2.40 (m, 1H), 3.10 (dd, 1H), 3.23 (m, 1H), 3.39 (m, 1H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 3.73 (dd, 1H), 4.95 (m, 1H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 7.89 (s, 1H), 8.05 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 410.0.

EXAMPLE 106**N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-N'-acetylenediamine**

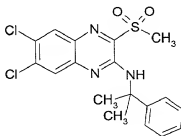
5

The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 84.

- 10 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.97 (s, 3H), 3.40 (s, 3H), 3.55 (q, 2H), 3.72 (q, 2H), 7.21 (b, 1H), 7.78 (s, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive) 377.0.

EXAMPLE 107

- 15 **N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-N-(1,1-dimethylbenzyl)amine**



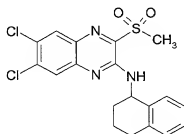
- 20 The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 84.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.86 (s, 6H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 7.20 (m, 1H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.47 (m, 3H), 7.49 (s, 1H), 7.89 (s, 1H).
5686.200-US

MS (APCI positive) 410.0.

EXAMPLE 108

N-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-N-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-naphthalene-1-yl)amine



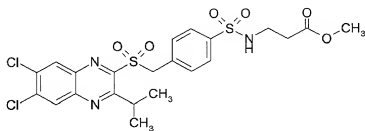
The title compound was prepared using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 84.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.95 (m, 3H), 2.01 (m, 1H), 2.86 (m, 2H), 3.40 (s, 3H), 5.56 (m, 1H), 7.16 (d, 2H), 7.19 (d, 2H), 7.35 (d, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 7.99 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 422.0.

EXAMPLE 109

Methyl 3-[(4-[(6,7-dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)sulfonyl]methyl)phenyl)sulfonyl]-amino)propanoate



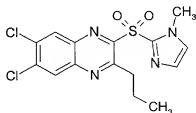
Using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 35, the title compound was obtained as a white solid.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.39 (d, 6H), 2.56 (t, 2H), 3.22 (q, 2H), 3.67 (s, 3H), 4.05 (m, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.88 (d, 2H), 8.26 (s, 1H), 8.29 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 560.0.

5 EXAMPLE 110

6,7-Dichloro-2-[(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)sulfonyl]-3-propylquinoxaline



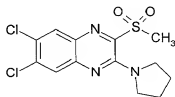
- 10 Using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 34, the title compound was obtained as a yellow solid.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.10 (t, 3H), 2.00 (m, 2H), 3.47 (t, 2H), 4.04 (s, 3H), 7.22 (s, 1H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H), 8.22 (s, 1H).

- 15 MS (APCI positive) 385.0.

EXAMPLE 111

6,7-Dichloro-2-(methylsulfonyl)-3-(1-pyrrolidinyl)quinoxaline



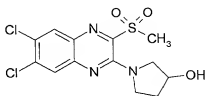
20

Using the same procedure as described in example 84, the title compound was obtained as a yellow solid.

- 25 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 2.01 (m, 4H), 3.45 (s, 3H), 3.89 (m, 4H), 7.81 (s, 1H), 7.91 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 346.0.

5686.200-US

EXAMPLE 112**1-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-3-pyrrolidinol**

5

Using the same procedure as described in example 84, the title compound was obtained as a yellow solid.

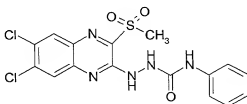
¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.12 (m, 2H), 3.45 (s, 3H), 3.98 (m, 2H), 4.08 (m, 2H), 4.64 (m, 1H), 7.83 (s, 1H), 7.93 (s, 1H).

10

MS (APCI positive) 362.0.

EXAMPLE 113**2-[6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-4-phenylsemicarbazide**

15

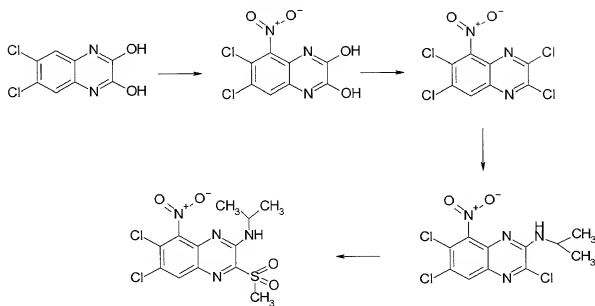


To a solution of 3,6,7-trichloro-2-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline (312 mg, 1.0 mmol) in DMF (10 ml) was added caesium carbonate (489 mg, 1.5 mmol) followed by 4-phenylsemicarbazide (182 mg, 1.2 mmol). The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexane 1:1 obtaining the title compound as a solid.

20

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 3.55 (s, 3H), 6.95 (m, 1H), 7.24 (m, 2H), 7.43 (m, 2H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 8.34 (s, 1H), 8.53 (s, 1H), 8.95 (brd s, 1H), 9.01 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive) 425.9.

25

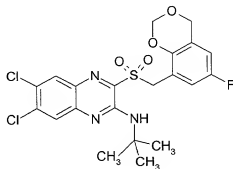
EXAMPLE 114**(6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonyl-8-nitroquinoxalin-2-yl)isopropylamine**

- 5 To a stirred suspension of 6,7-dichloroquinoxaline-2,3-diol (1.0 g, 4.3 mmol) in concentrated sulfuric acid (20 ml) at 0 °C was added sodium nitrate (554 mg, 6.5 mmol) in portions over 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction was quenched by slowly pipetting into ice water. The precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and the beige solid was washed with water. The nitrated product was suspended in
- 10 phosphorous oxychloride, about 6 ml of DMF was added to make it homogeneous and the reaction was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction was quenched by slowly pipetting into ice water. The aqueous mixture was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and concentrated *in vacuo* to a beige solid. To a solution of the chlorinated product (1.57 g, crude) in DMF was added caesium carbonate (2.36 g, 7.2 mmol)
- 15 followed by isopropyl amine (0.31 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The solid was taken up in water and ethyl acetate. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and concentrated to a yellow solid that was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexane 1:10. To a solution of the
- 20 aminated product (588 mg, 1.7 mmol) in DMF (20 ml) was added methanesulfinic acid sodium salt (215 mg, 2.1 mmol). The solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The final product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:hexane 1:5 obtaining the title compound as a yellow solid.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.29 (d, 6H), 3.42 (s, 3H), 4.25 (m, 1H), 7.13 (bd, 1H), 8.09 (s, 1H). MS (APCI positive) 378.9.

5 EXAMPLE 115

N-(tert-Butyl)-N-[(6,7-dichloro-3-[(6-fluoro-4H-1,3-benzodioxin-8-yl)methylsulfonyl]-2-quinoxaliny)]amine



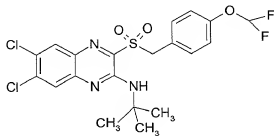
- 10 Using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 35, the title compound was obtained as a yellow solid.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.40 (s, 9H), 4.71 (m, 6H), 6.73 (m, 1H), 7.05 (m, 2H), 7.79 (s, 1H), 8.00 (s, 1H).

- 15 MS (APCI positive) 500.0.

EXAMPLE 116

N-(tert-Butyl)-N-[(6,7-dichloro-3-[(4-(difluoromethoxy)benzyl)sulfonyl]-2-quinoxaliny)]amine



Using the same procedure as described for the preparation of example 35, the title compound was obtained as a yellow solid.

5686,200-US

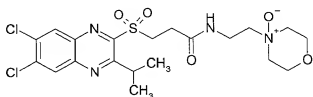
$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.40 (s, 9H), 4.75 (s, 2H), 6.25-6.74 (t, 1H), 6.99 (s, 1H), 7.07 (m, 2H), 7.29 (m, 2H), 7.79 (s, 1H), 8.01 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive) 490.0.

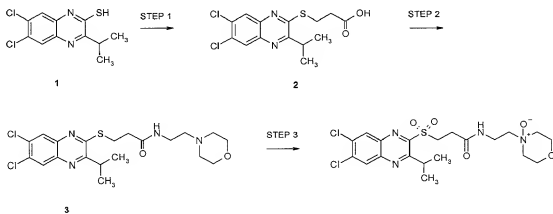
5

EXAMPLE 117

4-[2-((3-((6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)sulfonyl)propanoyl)amino)ethyl]morpholine-N-oxide



10



STEP 1:

To a solution of 6,7-dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-mercaptoquinoxaline (800 mg, 2.94 mmol) (1) in DMF (20 ml) was added a small scoop of potassium carbonate followed by 3-mercapto-propionic acid (312 mg, 2.94 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature.

- 5 After 5 hours, thin layer chromatography showed all starting material was gone. The solvent was removed *in vacuo*, the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and 10% HCl was added. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a pale yellow solid (2) (1.05 g) with the following data:

10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.26 (d, 6H), 2.80 (m, 2H), 3.27 (m, 1H), 3.48 (m, 2H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 8.09 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 345.0.

15 STEP 2:

To a solution of the above acid (2) (160 mg, 0.465 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (89 mg, 0.558 mmol) in 3 ml of dichloromethane was added 4-(2-aminoethyl)morpholine (60 mg, 0.465 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 h. The solvent was removed and the residue was partitioned in water and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated and concentrated to a white solid (3). It was used in the next step without further purification.

STEP 3:

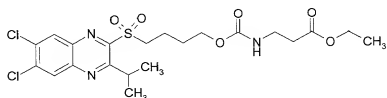
- 25 To a suspension of 3-[(6,7-dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)sulfanyl]-N-[2-(4-morpholinyl)-ethyl]propanamide (0.465 mmol) (prepared by using the method according to example 35) in dichloromethane (20 ml) was added mCPBA (1.16 mmol) at room temperature. The solution was stirred overnight and concentrated to a pale yellow foam. The crude material was then redissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and concentrated to yield a beige solid. The title compound was isolated and purified by preparative HPLC chromatography to yield a white solid.
- 30

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.34 (d, 6H), 2.87 (t, 2H), 3.30 (m, 2H), 3.42 (m, 2H), 3.57 (m, 2H), 3.79 (m, 4H), 4.03 (m, 3H), 4.23 (t, 2H), 8.18 (s, 2H), 8.52 (bs, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 505.1.

EXAMPLE 118

Ethyl 3-[(4-{[6,7-dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny]sulfonyl}butoxy)carbonyl]amino-
 5 propanoate



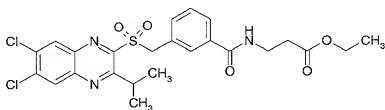
To a solution of 4-[(6,7-dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)sulfonyl]-1-butanol (0.822 mmol)
 10 (prepared by using the method according to example 35) and ethyl 3-isocyanatopropionate (0.822 mmol) in toluene was added dibutyl tin dilaurate catalyst (0.01%). The resulting mixture was heated to 80 °C for 6 hours. The solvent was then evaporated and the resulting solid redissolved in ethyl acetate and washed twice with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated further to a pale yellow solid (94%). The crude product was then suspended in dichloromethane (30 ml) and 2.1 equivalents of mCPBA were added. The resulting solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated and the
 15 title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography to yield a white solid (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20).

20 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.17 (t, 3H), 1.35 (d, 6H), 1.82 (m, 2H), 1.98 (m, 2H), 2.45 (m, 2H), 3.36 (m, 2H), 3.70 (m, 2H), 4.07 (cm, 5H), 5.17 (bs, 1H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 520.1.

EXAMPLE 119

Ethyl 3-[(3-[(6,7-dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)lsulfonyl)methyl]benzoyl)amino]propanoate



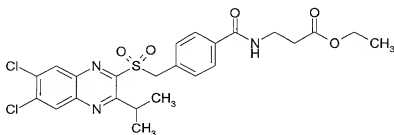
Using the procedure described in example 35, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20) to yield an off white solid (48%).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.20 (t, 3H), 1.31 (d, 6H), 2.57 (t, 2H), 3.65 (q, 2H), 3.98 (m, 1H), 4.10 (q, 2H), 4.98 (s, 2H), 6.80 (bs, 1H), 7.38 (m, 1H), 7.65 (m, 2H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 8.19 (s, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 538.1.

EXAMPLE 120

Ethyl 3-[(4-[(6,7-dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)lsulfonyl)methyl]benzoyl)amino]propanoate



Using the procedure described in example 35, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 70:30) to yield a white solid.

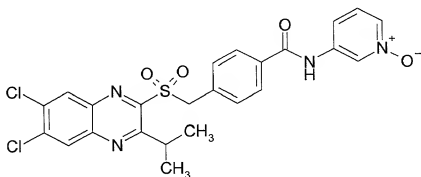
¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.19 (t, 3H), 1.29 (d, 6H), 2.55 (t, 2H), 3.64 (m, 2H), 3.97 (m, 1H), 4.09 (q, 2H), 4.98 (s, 2H), 6.80 (bs, 1H), 7.53 (d, 2H), 7.69 (d, 2H), 8.20 (s, 2H).

5686.200-US

MS (APCI positive): 538.1.

EXAMPLE 121

3-[(4-[(6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)sulfonyl]methyl)benzoyl]amino]-1-pyridine-N-oxide

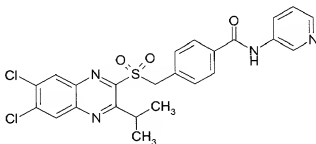


Using the procedure described in example 35, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 50:50) to yield an off white solid (67%).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 1.28 (d, 6H), 3.94 (m, 1H), 5.33 (s, 2H), 7.39 (m, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H), 7.70 (d, 2H), 7.90 (d, 2H), 7.97 (d, 1H), 8.51 (s, 1H), 8.69 (s, 1H), 8.76 (s, 1H), 10.55 (s, 1H). MS (APCI positive): 531.0.

EXAMPLE 122

4-[(6,7-Dichloro-3-isopropyl-2-quinoxaliny)sulfonyl]methyl]-N-(3-pyridinyl)benzamide

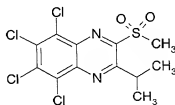


Using the procedure described in example 35, the title compound was purified by preparative HPLC chromatography.

5686,200-US

^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 1.39 (d, 6H), 4.08 (m, 1H), 5.28 (s, 2H), 7.47 (m, 2H), 7.75 (d, 2H), 7.98 (d, 2H), 8.26 (bd, 1H), 8.36 (bs, 1H), 8.38 (s, 1H), 8.55 (s, 1H), 8.90 (bs, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 515.1.

5

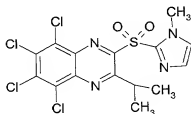
EXAMPLE 123**5,6,7,8-Tetrachloro-2-isopropyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline**

10

Using the procedure described in example 19, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a light orange solid.

15

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.35 (d, 6H), 3.48 (s, 3H), 4.12 (m, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 388.9.

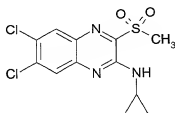
EXAMPLE 124**5,6,7,8-Tetrachloro-2-isopropyl-3-[(1-methylimidazol-2-yl)sulfonyl]quinoxaline**

20

Using the procedure described in example 7, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20) to yield an off white solid.

25

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.47 (d, 6H), 4.01 (s, 3H), 4.25 (m, 1H), 7.19 (s, 1H), 7.25 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 454.9.
5686.200-US

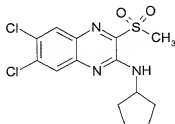
EXAMPLE 125**(6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonylquinoxalin-2-yl)cyclopropylamine**

5

Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a yellow solid.

10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.55 (m, 2H), 0.85 (m, 2H), 2.86 (m, 1H), 7.03 (bs, 1H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 7.91 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 331.9.

EXAMPLE 126**(6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonylquinoxalin-2-yl)cyclopentylamine**

15

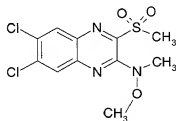
Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a yellow solid.

20

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.56 (m, 2H), 1.75 (cm, 4H), 2.14 (m, 2H), 3.41 (s, 3H), 4.44 (m, 1H), 7.00 (bd, 1H), 7.84 (s, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 360.0.

25

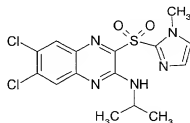
EXAMPLE 127**6,7-Dichloro-2-[methoxy(methyl)amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline**

5

Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 70:30) to yield a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.33 (s, 3H), 3.39 (s, 3H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 7.92 (s, 1H), 8.01 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI positive): 336.0.

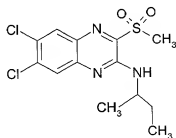
EXAMPLE 128**N-(6,7-Dichloro-3-[1-methylimidazol-2-yl)sulfonyl]-2-quinoxaliny]-N-isopropylamine**

15

Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 70:30) to yield a yellow solid.

20 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.34 (d, 6H), 4.15 (s, 3H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 7.22 (bm, 2H), 7.79 (s, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 400.0.

EXAMPLE 129(6,7-Dichloro-3-methylsulfonylquinoxalin-2-yl)-sec-butylamine

5

Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10).

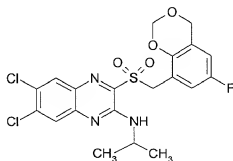
10

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.00 (t, 3H), 1.29 (d, 3H), 1.66 (bm, 3H), 3.42 (s, 3H), 4.25 (m, 1H), 6.83 (bd, 1H), 7.82 (s, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 348.0.

EXAMPLE 130

(6,7-Dichloro-3-(((6-fluoro-4H-1,3-benzodioxin-8-yl)methyl)sulfonyl)quinoxalin-2-yl)isopropylamine



5

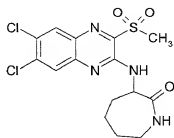
Using the procedure described in example 35, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a yellow solid.

- 10 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.10 (d, 6H), 4.15 (m, 1H), 4.65 (s, 2H), 4.71 (s, 2H), 6.65 (m, 1H), 6.87 (m, 1H), 6.95 (dd, 1H), 7.73 (s, 1H), 7.94 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 486.0.

EXAMPLE 131

- 15 3-([6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-2-amino)-2-azepanone

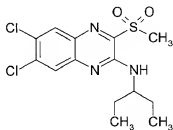


- 20 Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20).

$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 1.96 (bm, 6H), 3.29 (m, 1H), 3.34 (s, 3H), 4.75 (m, 2H), 5.96 (bs, 1H), 7.76 (s, 1H), 7.94 (s, 1H), 8.27 (m, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 403.0.

5686.200-US

EXAMPLE 132(6,7-Dichloro)-3-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxalin-2-yl)-1-ethylpropylamine

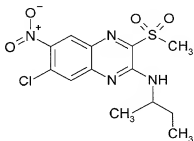
5

Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a yellow solid.

- 10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.89 (t, 6H), 1.55 (cm, 4H), 3.35 (s, 3H), 4.11 (m, 1H), 6.71 (bd, 1H), 7.73 (s, 1H), 7.87 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 362.0.

EXAMPLE 133

- 15 (7-Chloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-6-nitroquinoxalin-2-yl)sec-butylamine

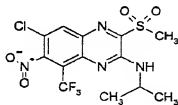


- 20 Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.01 (t, 3H), 1.31 (d, 3H), 1.69 (m, 2H), 3.46 (s, 3H), 4.30 (m, 1H), 7.12 (bd, 1H), 7.81 (s, 1H), 8.47 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI positive): 359.0.

25

5686,200-US

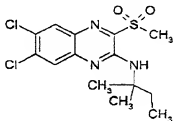
EXAMPLE 134(6-Chloro-3-methylsulfonyl-7-nitro-8-trifluoromethylquinoxalin-2-yl)isopropylamine

5

Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20) to yield yellow crystals.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.40 (d, 6H), 3.48 (s, 3H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 8.21 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI negative): 411.0.

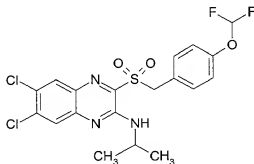
EXAMPLE 135(6,7-Dichloro-3-(methylsulfonyl)-quinoxalin-2-yl)tert-pentylamine

15

Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20) to yield a yellow solid.

20 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 0.92 (t, 3H), 1.50 (s, 6H), 1.93 (q, 2H), 3.42 (s, 3H), 6.92 (bs, 1H), 7.81 (s, 1H), 7.94 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 362.0.

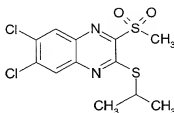
EXAMPLE 136(6,7-Dichloro-3-([4-(difluoromethoxy)benzyl]sulfonyl)quinoxalin-2-yl)isopropylamine

5

Using the procedure described in example 35, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.19 (d, 6H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 4.77 (s, 2H), 6.26, 6.50, 6.74 (s, 1H), 6.86 (bd, 1H), 7.09 (d, 2H), 7.32 (d, 2H), 7.80 (s, 1H), 8.04 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI negative): 474.0.

EXAMPLE 1376,7-Dichloro-2-(isopropylsulfanyl)-3-(methylsulfonyl)quinoxaline

15

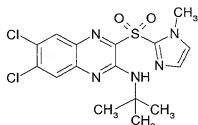
Using the procedure described in example 84 replacing 2-isopropylamine with isopropylmercaptane, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 1.45 (d, 6H), 3.53 (s, 3H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 8.38 (s, 1H), 8.48 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 350.9.

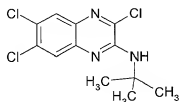
25

5686.200-US

EXAMPLE 138**(6,7-Dichloro-3-[(1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl)sulfonyl]quinoxalin-2-yl)-tert-butylamine**

5

Using the procedure described in example 84, step 1 the following compound was made:

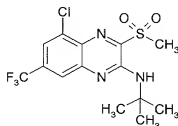
10 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.56 (s, 9H), 5.62 (bs, 1H), 7.82 (s, 1H), 7.86 (s, 1H).

Using this compound and proceeding according to example 7, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20) to yield a yellow solid.

15

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.56 (s, 9H), 4.15 (s, 3H), 7.17 (s, 1H), 7.25 (s, 1H), 7.33 (s, 1H), 7.79 (s, 1H), 7.83 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI positive): 413.9.

EXAMPLE 139(5-Chloro-3-methylsulfonyl-7-trifluoromethyl-2-quinoxalin-2-yl)-tert-butylamine

5

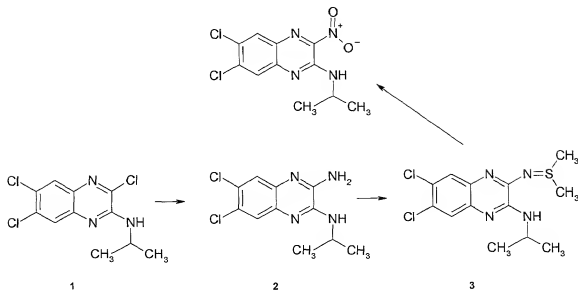
Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20) to yield a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.62 (s, 9H), 3.45 (s, 3H), 7.20 (bs, 1H), 7.94 (s, 1H), 8.06 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI negative): 380.1.

EXAMPLE 140

(6,7-Dichloro-3-nitroquinoxalin-2-yl)isopropylamine



5

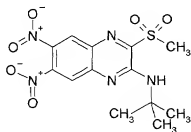
Ammonia gas was bubbled into a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-(N-isopropyl)-quinoxaline (1) (1.11 mmol) (prepared as described in example 84) in DMF (30 ml) at 0 °C for 2 hours. The resulting solution was concentrated and (2) was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield a pale yellow powder. At -78 °C,

10 trifluoromethanesulfonic acid anhydride (1.2 mmol) was added to DMSO (1.2 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 ml) under nitrogen atmosphere. To this mixture, (2) dissolved in 10 ml DMSO:dichloromethane (1:1) was added dropwise. The resulting solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The solution was then washed with water (2 x 50 ml), brine, and dried over magnesium sulfate. The sulfimine (3) was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 75:35). (3) was oxidised with an excess of

15 mCPBA (20 equivalents) in dichloromethane to yield the title compound, which was purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 90:10) to yield an orange solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.35 (d, 6H), 4.49 (m, 1H), 7.45 (bs, 1H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 8.05 (s, 1H).

20 MS (APCI negative): 299.0.

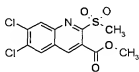
EXAMPLE 141(3-Methylsulfonyl-6,7-dinitroquinoxalin-2-yl)-tert-butylamine

5

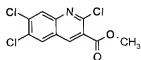
Using the procedure described in example 84, the title compound was isolated and purified by column chromatography (petroleum ether:ethyl acetate 80:20) to yield a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.56 (s, 9H), 3.46 (s, 3H), 7.43 (bs, 1H), 8.00 (s, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H).

10 MS (APCI negative): 369.1.

EXAMPLE 1426,7-Dichloro-2-methanesulfonylquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester

15

STEP 1: Preparation of 2,6,7-trichloroquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester

20

25% aqueous sodium hydroxide (75 ml) was cooled to 0 °C, bromine (16.0 g, 0.1 mol) was added and the mixture was stirred to form a yellow solution of NaOBr. 4,5-Dichloro-phthalimide (21.6 g, 0.1 mol) was dissolved in 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide (170 ml), the solution was cooled to 0 °C and added to the cold solution of NaOBr. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 5 min and then heated to 80 °C for 2 min. The reaction mixture was

5686.200-US

25

cooled and neutralised with concentrated hydrochloric acid. The precipitate was filtered off and washed with ice water. The product was recrystallised from a mixture of methanol and water. This afforded 14.8 g (72%) of 2-amino-4,5-dichlorobenzoic acid. M.p. 196-203 °C.

- 5 The above 2-amino-4,5-dichlorobenzoic acid was reduced to 2-amino-4,5-dichlorobenzaldehyde according to the procedure described in: Cordi A. A.; Desos P.; Randle J.C.R.; Lepagnol J. *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry* **1995** 3, (2), 129-141.

Yield: 46%, m.p. 139-141 °C.

10

The above 2-amino-4,5-dichlorobenzaldehyde was used for preparation of 6,7-dichloro-2(1H)-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester according to the procedure in: Desos P.; Lepagnol J.; Morain P., Lestage P.; Cordi A. A. *J. Med. Chem.* **1996**, 39, 197-206.

- 15 Yield: 87%, m.p. >300 °C.

The above ester (16.33 g, 0.05 mol) was refluxed in POCl_3 (46 ml, 0.5 mol) for 4 hours. POCl_3 was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue was mixed with ice and neutralised with sodium hydrogencarbonate. The precipitate was filtered off. The product was crystallised from tetrahydrofuran to yield 10.6 g (73%) of 2,6,7-trichloroquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester, m.p. 178.5-180 °C.

20

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 3.97 (s, 3H), 8.20 (s, 1H); 8.42 (s, 1H), 8.84 (s, 1H).

- 25 Calculated for $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_6\text{Cl}_3\text{NO}_2$:
C, 45.48%; H, 2.08%; N, 4.82%; Cl, 36.61%; Found:
C, 45.18%; H, 2.30%; N, 4.75%; Cl, 36.51%.

STEP 2: Preparation of 6,7-dichloro-2-methanesulfonylquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester

30

To a suspension of 2,6,7-trichloroquinoline-3-carboxylic acid methyl ester (1 g, 3.44 mmol) in DMF (20 ml) was added sodium methanesulfinate (1.05 g, 10.3 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 1 hour under nitrogen. The cooled mixture was partitioned between diethyl ether and water. The organic layer was separated and evaporated and the residue

5686.200-US

purified by flash column chromatography using dichloromethane:ethyl acetate (gradient) followed by recrystallisation from ethanol to yield 417 mg (36%) of the title compound as a white solid.

- 5 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.48 (s, 3H), 4.05 (s, 3H), 8.10 (s, 1H), 8.37 (s, 1H), 8.59 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) m/z 335.

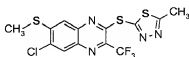
Calculated for C₁₂H₉Cl₂NO₄S:

C, 43.13%; H, 2.71%; N, 4.19%; Found:

- 10 C, 43.17%; H, 2.73%; N, 4.16%;

EXAMPLE 143

6-Chloro-7-methylsulfanyl-2-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-3-trifluoromethyl-
quinoxaline



- 20 A mixture of 6-chloro-7-fluoro-3-trifluoromethyl-quinoxalin-2-ol and 7-chloro-6-fluoro-3-trifluoromethyl-quinoxalin-2-ol (4.1 g, prepared similarly as described above from 4-chloro-5-fluoro-1,2-diaminobenzene and ethyl trifluoropyruvate) was dissolved in DMF (140 ml) and sodium hydrogen sulfide monohydrate (3.5 g, 47 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and then iodomethane (3.5 ml) was added. Stirring was continued for 10 minutes and the reaction mixture was poured on ice/water (500 ml). The separated crystals were filtered, dried and recrystallised from ethanol to afford 1.73 g (38%) of 6-chloro-7-methylsulfanyl-3-trifluoromethyl-1H-quinoxalin-2-one.

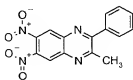
¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 2.58 (s, 3H), 7.18 (s, 1H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 13.02 (br s, 1H)
MS (APCI positive) m/z 294.

Preparation of 6-chloro-7-methylsulfanyl-2-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline:

2,6-Dichloro-7-methylsulfanyl-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline (116 mg, 0.37 mmol, prepared similarly as described above from 6-chloro-7-methylsulfanyl-3-trifluoromethyl-1H-quinoxaline-2-one, dimethylaminopyridine and POCl_3) and 2-mercapto-5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazole (146 mg, 1.1 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (3.3 ml). Potassium carbonate (20 mg) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at 50 °C for 2 hours. The cooled mixture was partitioned between diethyl ether and water. The organic layer separated, evaporated and the residue recrystallised from ethanol to afford 80 mg (50%) of the title compound as a yellow solid.

$^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3): δ 2.64 (s, 3H), 2.92 (s, 3H), 7.50 (s, 1H), 8.15 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$) m/z 409.

EXAMPLE 144**2-Methyl-6,7-dinitro-3-phenylquinoxaline**

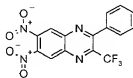
5

4,5-Dinitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (890 mg, 4.5 mmol) (G. W. H. Cheeseman, J. Org. Soc. 1170-5, 1962) was mixed with 1-phenyl-1,2-propanedione (800 mg, 5.4 mmol) in ethanol (18 ml). The mixture was heated to reflux for 4 hours. The ethanol was removed by evaporation and the remaining brown oil was suspended in dichloromethane (20 ml). Purification by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with dichloromethane followed by recrystallisation from ethanol yielded the title compound (200 mg, 14%).

10

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.91 (s, 3H), 7.60 (m, 3H), 7.72 (m, 2H), 8.60 (s, 1H), 8.66 (s, 1H).

15

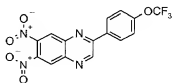
EXAMPLE 145**6,7-Dinitro-2-phenyl-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline**

20

The title compound was prepared from 4,5-dinitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (890 mg, 4.5 mmol) and 3,3,3-trifluoro-1-phenyl-1,2-propanedione hydrate (1 g, 4.9 mmol) similarly as described in example 144.

25

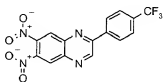
¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.56 (m, 3H), 7.68 (m, 2H), 8.63 (s, 1H), 8.89 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 146**6,7-Dinitro-2-(4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)quinoxaline**

5

4,5-Dinitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (890 mg, 4.5 mmol) and 4-trifluoromethoxyphenylacetyl bromide (1.5 g, 5.4 mmol) were mixed in ethanol (18 ml). The mixture was heated at reflux. After 1 hour N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (0.5 ml) was added and the reaction mixture refluxed for 3 more hours. A second amount of N-ethyl-diisopropylamine (0.2 ml) was added followed by reflux for 1 hour. The ethanol was removed by evaporation and the remaining brown oil was suspended in dichloromethane (20 ml). Purification by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with dichloromethane followed by recrystallisation from ethanol yielded the title compound (413 mg, 28%).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.48 (d, 2H), 8.34 (d, 2H), 8.68 (s, 1H), 8.72 (s, 1H), 9.58 (s, 1H).

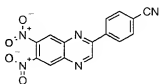
EXAMPLE 147**6,7-Dinitro-2-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)quinoxaline**

20

Prepared similarly as described in example 146 from 4,5-dinitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (890 mg, 4.5 mmol) and 4-(trifluoromethyl)phenylacetyl bromide (1.44 g, 5.4 mmol) to yield the title compound (50 mg, 3%).

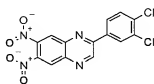
25

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.90 (d, 2H), 8.41 (d, 2H), 8.72 (s, 1H), 8.75 (s, 1H), 9.63 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 148**4-(6,7-Dinitroquinoxalin-2-yl)benzonitrile**

Prepared similarly as described in example 146 from 4,5-dinitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (890 mg, 4.5 mmol) and 4-cyanophenylacetyl bromide (1.21 g, 5.4 mmol) to yield the title compound.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.92 (d, 2H), 8.42 (d, 2H), 8.73 (s, 1H), 8.75 (s, 1H), 9.62 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 149**2-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-6,7-dinitroquinoxaline**

The oxidation of 3,4-dichloroacetophenone is a modification of a general procedure described in: Floyd M. B.; Du M.T.; Fabio P. F.; Jacob, L. A.; Johnson, B. D. *J. Org. Chem.* **1985** 50, (25), 5022-5027.

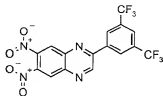
48% aqueous HBr (8.8 M) (3.4 ml, 30 mmol) was slowly added to a stirred solution of 3,4-dichloroacetophenone (1.89 g, 10 mmol) in DMSO (17 ml). The solution was stirred in an open flask at 55 °C for 24 hours. The solution was poured onto ice, the solid product was filtered, washed with water, and redissolved in ethanol (18 ml). 4,5-Dinitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (890 mg, 4.5 mmol) was added and the mixture was heated to reflux for 4 hours. The ethanol was removed by evaporation and the remaining brown oil was suspended in dichloromethane (20 ml). Purification by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with dichloromethane followed by recrystallisation from ethanol yielded the title compound (70 mg, 4%).

5686.200-US

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 7.70 (d, 1H), 8.12 (dd, 1H), 8.42 (d, 1H), 8.70 (s, 1H), 8.74 (s 1H), 9.58 (s, 1H).

5 EXAMPLE 150

2-(3,5-Bis-trifluoromethylphenyl)-6,7-dinitroquinoxaline



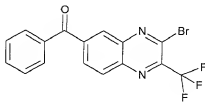
- 10 Prepared similarly as described in example 149 from 3,5-bis-(trifluoromethyl)acetophenone (2.56 g, 10 mmol) and 4,5-dinitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (890 mg, 4.5 mmol) to yield 200 mg (10%) of the title compound.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 8.15 (s, 1H), 8.74 (s, 2H), 8.78 (s, 1H), 8.80 (s, 1H), 9.60 (s, 1H).

15

EXAMPLE 151

(3-Bromo-2-trifluoromethylquinoxalin-6-yl)phenyl methanone



20

A mixture of 7-benzoyl-3-trifluoromethylquinoxalin-2(1H)-one (3.0 g, 9.4 mmol) [*J. Org.*

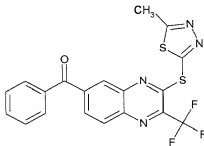
Chem. **57**(21), 5630,1992] and 40 ml of phosphorous tribromide was refluxed for 5 hours.

The mixture was cooled and poured into ice water and the precipitate was isolated. The crude solid was dissolved in a mixture of diethylether and ethyl acetate (1:1), followed by ad-
 25 dition of Norite A and anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The mixture was filtered and the solvent evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with hexane, filtered off and dried to yield 1.9 g (53%) of the title compound as a pale yellow solid.

M.p. 152-54 °C. ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 7.56-7.90 (m, 5H), 8.29 (dd, 1H), 8.38 (d, 1H), 8.44 (d, 1H).

5 EXAMPLE 152

[3-(5-Methyl-[1,3,4]thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-2-trifluoromethylquinoxalin-6-yl]phenyl methanone



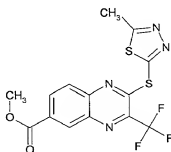
- 10 A mixture of (3-bromo-2-trifluoromethylquinoxalin-6-yl)phenyl methanone (144 mg, 0.299 mmol), 2-mercapto-5 methylthiadiazole (38 mg, 0.28 mmol) and caesium fluoride (55 mg, 0.36 mmol) in DMF (1.5 ml) was stirred for 16 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was purified by preparative HPLC (Gilson) to yield 35 mg (27%) of the title compound as a pale yellow solid.

15

M.p. 176-9 °C. ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 2.82(s, 3H) 7.57-7.88 (m, 1H), 8.19 (dd, 5H), 8.30 (d, 1H), 8.43 (d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 153

- 20 2-(5-Methyl-[1,3,4]thiadiazol-2-yl-sulfanyl)-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline-6-carboxylic acid methyl ester



STEP 1:

A mixture of methyl 3,4-diaminobenzoate (7.8 g, 46.9 mmol), ethyl trifluoropyruvate (8.0 g, 47.3 mmol) and a catalytic amount of p-toluenesulfonic acid in 100 ml of methanol was heated and stirred until no starting material could be detected by monitoring on TLC. The mixture was cooled to 50 °C and water was added until incipient precipitation. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with water and dried to yield 11.9 g (93%) of a 4:1 mixture of 2-oxo-3-trifluoromethyl-1,2-dihydro-quinoxaline-7-carboxylic acid methyl ester and 2-oxo-3-trifluoro-

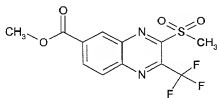
STEP 2:

The above isomeric mixture (2.0 g, 7.35 mmol) was brominated in analogy with the method outlined in example 151 to afford 1.69 g (69%) of a 4:1 mixture of 3-bromo-2-trifluoromethylquinoxaline-6-carboxylic acid methyl ester and 2-bromo-3-trifluoromethyl-quinoxaline-6-carboxylic acid methyl ester, respectively.

STEP 3:

The above mixture of bromides (1.32 g, 3.94 mmol) was reacted with 2-mercapto-5-methylthiadiazole in analogy with the method outlined in example 152 to afford the title compound as white needles.

M.p. 151-2 °C. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.94 (s, 3H) 4.05 (s, 3H) 8.05 (d, 1H), 8.48 (dd, 1H), 8.89 (d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 154**3-Methanesulfonyl-2-trifluoromethylquinoxaline-6-carboxylic acid methyl ester**

To a solution of a 4:1 mixture of 3-bromo-2-trifluoromethylquinoxaline-6-carboxylic acid methyl ester and 2-bromo-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline-6-carboxylic acid methyl ester, respectively (0.3 g, 0.895) (see example 153, step 2) in 1 ml of DMF was added methanesulfi-

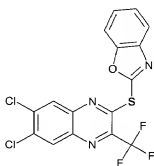
5686.200-US

nic acid, sodium salt (22 mg, 1.83 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for two hours. Purification by HPLC afforded the title compound as a white solid.

M.p. 143-4 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 3.67 (s, 3H), 4.02 (s, 3H), 8.50 (d, 1H), 8.60 (dd, 1H),
 5 8.88 (d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 155

2-Benzoxazol-2-yl-6,7-dichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline

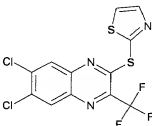


The title compound was prepared from 2-bromo-6,7-dichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline and 2-mercaptobenzoxazole in analogy with the method outlined in example 1.

M.p. 157-8 °C. ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.43 7.58 (m, 2H), 7.78-7.90 (m, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H),
 15 8.78 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 156

6,7-Dichloro-2-(thiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-3-trifluoromethyl-quinoxaline



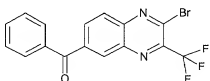
The title compound was prepared from 2-bromo-6,7-dichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline and 2-mercaptothiazole in analogy with the method outlined in example 1.

5686.200-US

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.08 (d, 1H), 8.12 (d, 1H), 8.38 (s, 1H), 8.67 (s, 1H).

EXAMPLE 157

5 (2-Bromo-3-trifluoromethyl-quinoxalin-6-yl)phenyl methanone

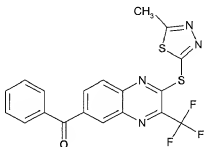


A mixture of 6-benzoyl-3-trifluoromethylquinoxalin-2(1H)-one (1.0 g, 3.13 mmol) [J. Org. Chem. **57**(21), 5630,1992] and 10 ml of phosphorous tribromide was refluxed for 5 hours. The mixture was cooled and poured into ice water and the precipitate was isolated, washed with water and dried. Yield 0.87 g (73%) of the title compound as beige crystals.

M.p. 124-6 °C. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.50-7.90 (m, 5H), 8.25 (d, 1H), 8.42 (dd, 1H), 8.57 (d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 158

10 [2-(5-Methyl-[1,3,4]thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-3-trifluorophenylquinoxalin-6-yl]phenyl methanone

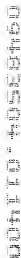


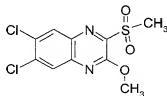
A mixture of (2-bromo-3-trifluoromethylquinoxalin-6-yl)phenyl methanone (100 mg, 0.263 mmol), 2-mercapto-5-methylthiadiazole (40 mg, 0.30 mmol) and caesium fluoride (54 mg, 0.36 mmol) in 1.0 ml of DMF was stirred for 16 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was purified by preparative HPLC (Gilson) to yield 44 mg (38%) of the title compound as a pale yellow solid.

M.p. 160-2 °C. ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6): δ 2.78(s, 3H) 7.60-7.90 (m, 5H), 8.25 (d, 1H), 8.38 (dd, 1H), 8.44 (d, 1H).

Analysis: Calculated for $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{11}\text{F}_3\text{N}_4\text{O}_1\text{S}_2$:

- 5 C, 52.77; H, 2.56; N, 12.96%. Found:
C, 52.56; H, 2.51; N, 12.89%.

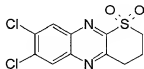


EXAMPLE 159**6,7-Dichloro-2-methanesulfonyl-3-methoxyquinoxaline**

5

Triethyl amine (210 mg, 2 mmol) was added to a suspension of 2,3,5,6-tetrachloro-quinoxaline (268 mg, 1 mmol) in methanol (25 ml). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 6 hours, cooled to room temperature and filtered. The filtrate was dissolved in DMF (20 ml). To this solution were added sodium hydrosulfide hydrate (56 mg, 0.75 mmol) and potassium carbonate (100 mg). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 0.5 hours. Iodomethane (131 mg, 1 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 10 min. Water (100 ml) was added and the water phase was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x 30 ml). The organic extracts were dried and evaporated and filtered through a short silica column with dichloromethane:hexane (1:20). The organic phase was evaporated and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (15 ml). 3-Chloroperoxybenzoic acid (100 mg) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 190 min. Dichloromethane was evaporated and the residue was dissolved in ether (40 ml). The organic phase was washed with a saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution (3 x 20 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated. Hexane (5 ml) was added to the residue and the title compound was filtered off and dried. Yield 30 mg, M.p. 216-9 °C.

20

EXAMPLE 160**6,7-Dichloro-3,4-dihydro-2H-1-thia-9,10-diaza-anthracene 1,1-dioxide**

25

STEP 1:

1,2-Diamino-4,5-dichlorobenzene (1.63 g, 9.22 mmol), dissolved in a small amount of DMF, was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 5-chloro-2-oxo-pentanoic acid ethyl ester (1.50 g, 5686.200-US

9.22 mmol) [J.H. Hoare, P. Yates J. Org. Chem. **1983**, **48**, 3333] in a mixture of DMF:glacial acetic acid 7:3 (5 ml). After stirring for 3 days at room temperature, the solvent was removed *in vacuo* leaving a dark coloured solid. Ethyl acetate was added and the insoluble material was removed by filtration over a short pad of silica. The filtrate was evaporated *in vacuo*, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate:heptane 25:75), to yield 25% of 6,7-dichloro-3-(3-chloropropyl)-1*H*-quinoxalin-2-one as a yellow solid.

¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆): δ 2.21 (quintet, 2H), 2.95 (t, 2H), 3.74 (t, 2H), 7.42 (s, 1H), 7.88 (s, 1H), 12.45 (br.s, 1H).

STEP 2:

6,7-Dichloro-3-(3-chloropropyl)-1*H*-quinoxalin-2-one (0.68 g, 2.33 mmol) was added to POCl₃ (10 ml) and the resulting mixture was heated under reflux for 0.5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured onto ice and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The resulting oil was purified by flash column chromatography (dichloromethane) to yield 21% of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-(3-chloropropyl)quinoxaline as a colourless oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.41 (quintet, 2H), 3.29 (t, 2H), 3.75 (t, 2H), 8.07 (s, 1H), 8.14 (s, 1H).

STEP 3:

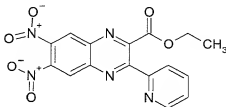
To a solution of 2,6,7-trichloro-3-(3-chloropropyl)quinoxaline (0.15 g, 0.48 mmol) in dry DMF (50 ml) were added sodium hydrosulfide (0.11 g, 1.44 mmol) and potassium carbonate (0.20 g, 1.45 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 days at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*, followed by the addition of water. The resulting mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3 x). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to yield 6,7-dichloro-3,4-dihydro-2*H*-1-thia-9,10-diaza-anthracene (>100%) as a solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.36 (quintet, 2H), 3.18 (t, 2H), 3.28 (t, 2H), 7.94 (s, 1H), 7.98 (s, 1H). MS (APCI (M+H)⁺) *m/z* 271.0.

STEP 4:

To a solution of 6,7-dichloro-3,4-dihydro-2H-1-thia-9,10-diaza-anthracene (0.15 g, 0.55 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 ml) was added 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (0.23 g, 1.16 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The product was purified by flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 1:1. After evaporation of the solvent, the residue was redissolved in dichloromethane and washed with sat. aqueous NaHCO₃. The organic layer was evaporated to yield 31% of the title compound as a grey solid, which was washed with methanol, water and acetone, respectively.

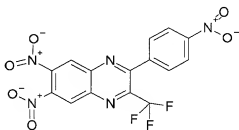
¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 2.47 (m, 2H), 3.37 (t, 2H), 3.84 (m, 2H), 8.46 (s, 1H), 8.62 (s, 1H).
MS APCI (M+1)⁺ m/z 303.0, (2M+Na)⁺ m/z 629.0.

EXAMPLE 161**Ethyl 6,7-dinitro-3-(2-pyridinyl)-2-quinoxalinecarboxylate**

To a solution of ethyl picolinoylacetate (5.17 mmol) in dioxane (30 ml) was added selenium dioxide (1.5 equivalents). The resulting solution was heated to reflux for 3 hours. The solvent was concentrated and the resulting oil was redissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with water (2 x), brine, and dried over magnesium sulfate. The desired product was used directly in the condensation reaction previously described in example 144 to give the title compound as a beige solid. Isolation and purification was achieved by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 20:80).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 1.27 (t, 3H), 4.43 (q, 2H), 7.69 (m, 1H), 8.17 (m, 1H), 8.48 (d, 1H), 8.76 (m, 1H), 9.14 (d, 2H).
MS (APCI positive): 370.0.

5686.200-US

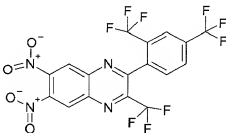
EXAMPLE 162**6,7-Dinitro-2-(4-nitrophenyl)-3-trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline**

5

To a solution of (6,7-dinitro-2-chloro-3-trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline in toluene under a nitrogen atmosphere was added potassium carbonate (0.958mmol), 4-nitrophenylboronic acid (0.958 mmol), and 10% tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0). The resulting mixture was heated at reflux overnight. The toluene was concentrated and the resulting residue was resuspended in ethyl acetate and filtered through a celite cake. Isolation and purification by flash column chromatography yielded the title compound as an off white solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 7.85 (d, 2H), 8.43 (d, 2H), 8.77 (s, 1H), 8.90 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI negative): 409.1.

EXAMPLE 163**2-[2,4-Bis(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-6,7-dinitro-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline**

20

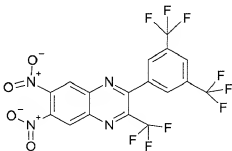
Using the procedure described in example 162, the title compound was obtained as a cream coloured solid upon isolation and purification by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 30:70).

- 5 $^1\text{H NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6): δ 8.14 (d, 1H), 8.44 (m, 2H), 9.30 (s, 1H), 9.45 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI negative): 500.0.

EXAMPLE 164

2-[3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-6,7-dinitro-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline

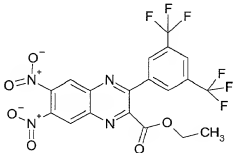
10



Using the procedure described in example 162, the title compound was obtained as an off white solid upon isolation and purification by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 20:80).

15

$^1\text{H NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6): δ 8.30 (bs, 3H), 9.13 (s, 1H), 9.22 (s, 1H).
MS (APCI negative): 500.0.

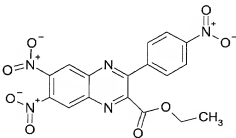
EXAMPLE 165Ethyl 3-[3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-6,7-dinitro-2-quinoxaline carboxylate

5

Using the procedure described in example 162, the title compound was obtained as an off white solid upon isolation and purification by preparative HPLC.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.36 (t, 3H), 4.49 (q, 2H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 8.29 (s, 2H), 8.81 (s, 1H), 8.85 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI negative): 504.0.

EXAMPLE 166Ethyl 6,7-dinitro-3-(4-nitrophenyl)-2-quinoxaline carboxylate

Using the procedure described in example 162, the title compound was obtained upon isolation and purification by flash column chromatography (ethyl acetate:petroleum ether 20:80).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.23 (t, 3H), 4.32 (q, 2H), 7.89 (d, 2H), 8.31 (d, 2H), 8.64 (s, 1H), 8.72 (s, 1H).

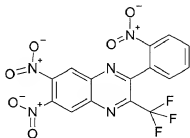
5686.200-US

MS (APCI negative): 413.1.

EXAMPLE 167

6,7-Dinitro-2-(2-nitrophenyl)-3-(trifluoromethyl)quinoxaline

5



Using the procedure described in example 162, the title compound was obtained as a mustard yellow solid upon isolation and purification by preparative HPLC.

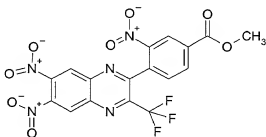
10

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 7.92 (m, 1H), 8.01 (m, 1H), 8.11 (m, 1H), 8.49 (d, 1H), 9.24 (s, 1H), 9.41 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI negative): 409.0.

15 EXAMPLE 168

Methyl 4-[6,7-dinitro-3-(trifluoromethyl)-2-quinoxaliny]-3-nitrobenzoate



20 Using the procedure described in example 162, the title compound was obtained as an off white solid upon isolation and purification by preparative HPLC.

5686.200-US

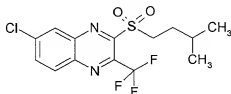
^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 4.08 (s, 3H), 7.66 (d, 1H), 8.55 (d, 1H), 8.70 (s, 1H), 8.94 (s, 1H), 9.05 (s, 1H).

MS (APCI negative): 467.1.

5

EXAMPLE 169

6-Chloro-3-(3-methylbutylsulfonyl)-2-trifluoromethyl-quinoxaline



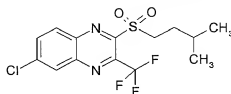
10 The starting material 3,6-dichloro-2-trifluoromethylquinoxaline was prepared according to the general method (A) and further reacted in analogy with the synthetic principles outlined in example 20.

^1H NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.02 (d, 6H), 1.80 (m, 3H), 3.75 (m, 2H), 8.00 (dd, 1H), 8.23 (dd, 1H),

15 8.25 (d, 1H).

EXAMPLE 170

6-Chloro-2-(3-methylbutyl-1-sulfonyl)-3-trifluoromethyl-quinoxaline



20

The starting material 2,6-dichloro-3-trifluoromethylquinoxaline was prepared according to the general method (A) and further reacted in analogy with the synthetic principles outlined in example 20.

25 ^1H NMR ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$): δ 0.93 (d, 6H), 1.70 (m, 3H), 3.87 (m, 2H), 8.26 (dd, 1H), 8.39 (d, 1H), 8.59 (d, 1H).

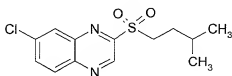
Analysis: Calculated for $C_{14}H_{14}ClF_3N_2O_2S$:

C, 45.85; H, 3.85; N, 7.64; S 8.74; Cl; 9.67%. Found:

C, 45.96; H, 3.80; N, 7.58; S 9.04; Cl; 9.92%.

5 EXAMPLE 171

6-Chloro-2-(3-methylbutylsulfonyl)quinoxaline



The starting material 2,7-dichloroquinoxaline was prepared according to the general method

- 10 (A) and further reacted in analogy with the synthetic principles outlined in example 20.

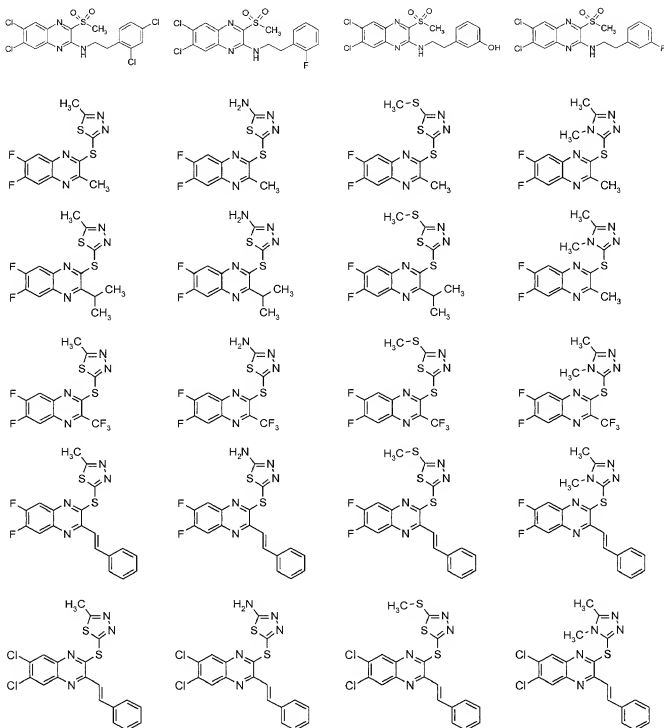
M.p. 120-1 °C. 1H NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 0.92 (d, 6H), 1.70 (m, 3H), 3.5z5 (m, 2H), 7.90 (dd, 1H), 8.20 (d, 1H), 8.28 (dd, 1H).

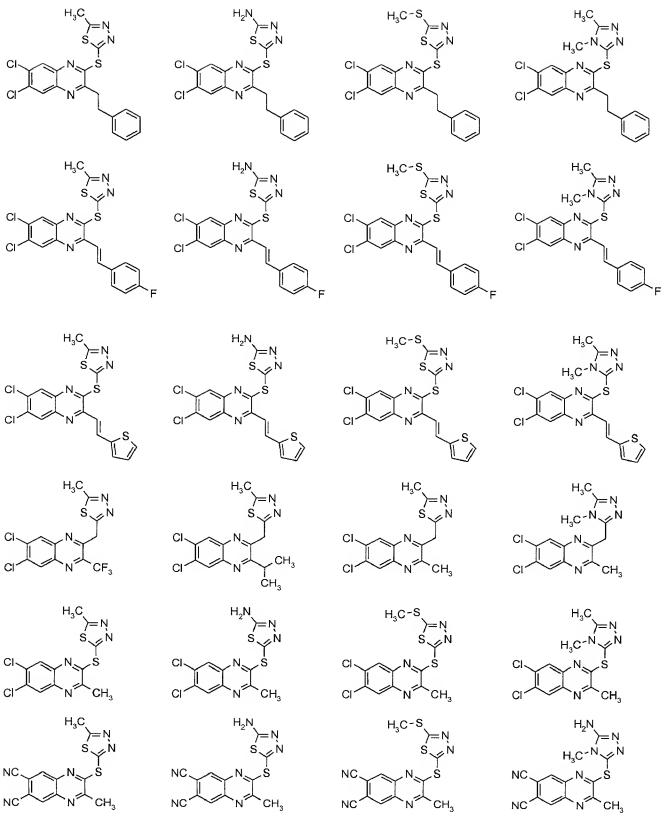
Analysis: Calculated for $C_{13}H_{15}ClN_2O_2S$:

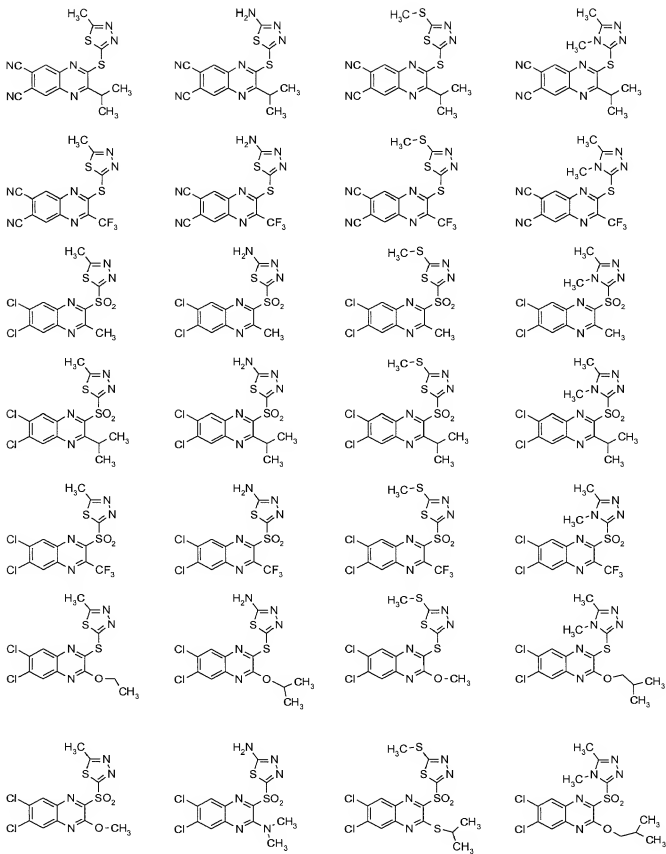
- 15 C, 52.26; H, 5.06 N, 9.38 %. Found:

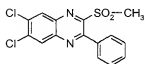
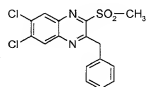
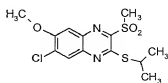
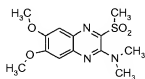
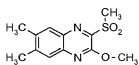
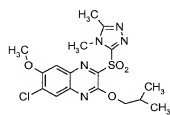
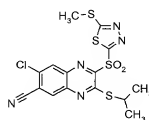
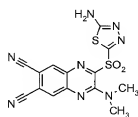
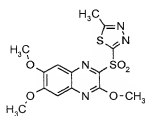
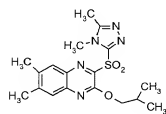
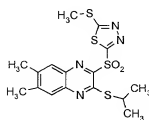
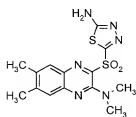
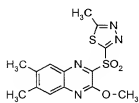
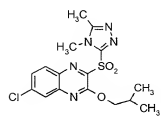
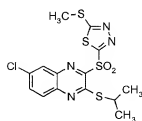
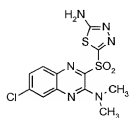
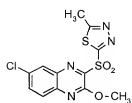
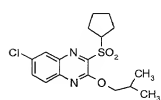
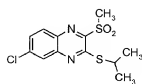
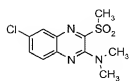
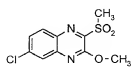
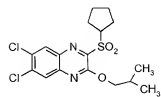
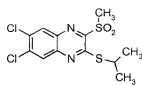
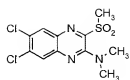
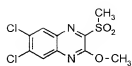
C, 52.42; H, 5.03 N, 9.31 %.

In a similar way as described in the foregoing examples the following compounds may be prepared:









EXAMPLE 172

Determinaton of EC₅₀

5 Stimulation of cAMP formation in a cell line expressing the cloned human GLP-1 receptor

In order to demonstrate the efficacy of the GLP-1 agonists, their ability to stimulate formation of cAMP in a cell line expressing the cloned human GLP-1 receptor was tested. The EC₅₀ value was calculated from the dose-response curve. Baby hamster kidney (BHK) cells ex-
 10 pressing the human pancreatic GLP-1 receptor were used (Knudsen and Pridal, 1996, Eur. J. Pharm. 318, 429-435).

Two different protocols were used:

15 Method 1:

Plasma membranes were prepared (Adelhorst *et al*, 1994, J. Biol. Chem. 269, 6275) by homogenisation in buffer (10 mmol/l Tris-HCl and 30 mmol/l NaCl pH 7.4, containing, in addition, 1 mmol/l dithiothreitol, 5 mg/l leupeptin (Sigma, St. Louis, MO, USA), 5 mg/l pepstatin (Sigma, St. Louis, MO, USA), 100 mg/l bacitracin (Sigma, St. Louis, MO, USA), and 16 mg/l
 20 aprotinin (Novo Nordisk A/S, Bagsvaerd, Denmark)). The homogenate was centrifuged on top of a layer of 41 w/v% sucrose. The white band between the two layers was diluted in buffer and centrifuged. Plasma membranes were stored at -80°C until use.

The assay was carried out in 96-well microtiter plates in a total volume of 200 µl. The resulting
 25 concentration in the assay was 50 mmol/l Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 1 mmol/l EGTA, 1.5 mmol/l MgCl₂, 1.85 mmol/l ATP, 20 µM GTP (guanosine triphosphate), 1 mmol/l 3-isobutyl-1-methylxanthine, 0.01% Tween-20 and 0.1% bovine serum albumin (Reinst, Behringwerke AG, Marburg, Germany). Compounds to be tested for agonist activity were dissolved and diluted in DMSO. GLP-1 was dissolved and diluted in buffer. For GLP-1 test, diluted GLP-1 was added in 35 µl
 30 buffer and 10 µl DMSO added extra. For compounds, 10 µl compound in DMSO was added. 1-4 µg plasma membrane in 50 µl buffer was added and the mixture was incubated for 2 hours at 37°C. The reaction was stopped by the addition of 25 µl of 0.5 mol/l HCl. Samples were diluted 5 to 10 fold before analysis for cAMP by a scintillation proximity assay (RPA 538, Amersham, UK). In this assay, GLP-1 was measured with a potency (EC₅₀) of 37 ± 23 pM (n=10).

Method 2:

Membranes were prepared as follows. Suspended cells from one 10 layer cell factory were transferred to 250 ml Sorwall tubes (for GSA rotor and centrifuged at 10.000 g for 10 min at 4 °C. 100 ml 25 mM Hepes (pH 7.4), 2.5 mM CaCl_2 , 1 mM MgCl_2 , 250 mg/l bacitracin, 0.1 mM Pefabloc (homogenizing buffer) were added to the cell pellet which was then homogenised for 2 X 10 sec. on Ultra-turex (on ice). 100 ml extra homogenising buffer was added and cell nuclei was spun down at 2000 g for 15 min, 4 °C (without brakes). The supernatant containing membranes was transferred to 200 ml tubes (for Sorwall A-621 rotor) and centrifuged at 40.000 g for 45 min at 4 °C. The pellet and 100 ml homogenising buffer were homogenised for 2 X 10 sec. on Ultra-turex (on ice). 100 ml extra homogenising buffer was added and centrifugation continued at 40.000 g for 45 min at 4 °C. The membrane pellet was resuspended in 10 ml 25 mM Hepes (pH7.4), 2.5 mM CaCl_2 , 1 mM MgCl_2 using Ultra-turex 2 X 10 sec. (on ice). After protein determination 10 v/v% 25 mM Hepes (pH 7.4), 2.5 mM CaCl_2 , 1mM MgCl_2 , 1% BSA, 0.5 mg/ml bacitracin, 2.5 M sucrose was added. The membranes were stored at -80 °C until use.

The assay was carried out in 96-well microtiter plates in a total volume of 200 μl . To 195 μl (50 mmol/l Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 1 mmol/l EGTA, 1.5 mmol/l MgCl_2 , 1.85 mmol/l ATP, 20 μM GTP, 1 mmol/l 3-isobutyl-1-methylxanthine and 0.1% bovine serum albumin (Reinst, Behringwerke AG, Marburg, Germany)), 32 μg plasma membrane protein was added. Compounds to be tested for agonist activity were dissolved and diluted in DMSO. GLP-1 was dissolved and diluted in 0.2% Tween-20. For GLP-1 test, diluted GLP-1 was added in 5 μl 0.2% Tween-20 and 5 μl DMSO added extra. For compounds, 5 μl in DMSO was added and 5 μl 0.2% Tween-20 added extra. The mixture was incubated for 2 hours at 37°C. The reaction was stopped by the addition of 50 μl of 0.5 mol/l HCl. Samples were diluted 5 to 10 fold before analysis for cAMP by a scintillation proximity assay (RPA 538, Amersham, UK). In this assay, GLP-1 was measured with a potency (EC_{50}) of 400 ± 200 pM ($n=10$).

In the following Table the results are given for a representative selection of the present compounds:

Compound, Example No	EC ₅₀ (nM)	E _{max} (%)
6	170 *	94
7	78 *(KHP21298)	120
19	160 *(KHP21698)	120
20	68*	140
25	*	15 at 33.000 nM
29	*	13 at 33.000 nM
56	78*	130
46	*>33.000	0
47	10.000*	50
2	310*	100
65	650**	53
92	770**	53
103	50**	80
137	660***	46
138	540***	72
135	290***	76
136	820***	64
108	680***	54
169	**	19 at 1000 nM
171	**	27 at 33000 nM
170	**	33 at 1000 nM
156	**	42 at 10.000 nM
147	**	31 at 1000 nM
145	**	36 at 330 nM
157	**	15 at 3300 nM

- 5 EC₅₀ was calculated in relation to the GLP-1 curve. EC₅₀ for the compound is thus defined as the concentration of compound giving the same response as the EC₅₀ for GLP-1.

*Method 1, one representative experiment

**Method 2, one representative experiment

***Method 2, average of two experiments

5

EXAMPLE 173

Competition binding assay, compounds do not compete with 125 I-GLP-1

- 10 Plasma membranes were prepared from BHK cells. Binding assays were carried out in polypropylene tubes. The buffer was 25 mM HEPES, 0.1% BSA, pH 7.4. GLP-1 and test compounds were dissolved and diluted as described in 172. Tracer (labelled GLP-1) was prepared as described in (28). Test compound + tracer (30.000 cpm) + plasma membranes (0.5-2 μ g) were mixed and tubes incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. Non-specific binding was determined with
- 15 10^{-7} M GLP-1. Bound and unbound tracer were separated by vacuum filtration. The filters were counted in a γ -scintillation counter. The binding of the tracer in the absence of the test compounds and GLP-1 was set to 100%. A compound which does not compete with GLP-1 in a competition binding assay will not displace the tracer. Therefore, the tracer will display an unchanged binding of 100% in this assay whereas different concentrations of GLP-1 will compete
- 20 with the tracer resulting in a decreased binding of the tracer in the range of between 0 and up to 100%.

EXAMPLE 174

- 25 Competition binding assay, compounds potentiate binding of 125 I-GLP-1

- Plasma membranes were prepared as in example 172. Binding assays were carried out in polypropylene tubes. The buffer was 25 mM HEPES, 0.1% BSA, pH 7.4. GLP-1 and test compounds were dissolved and diluted as described in example 172. Tracer (labelled GLP-1) was
- 30 prepared as described in (28). Test compound + tracer (30.000 cpm) + plasma membrane (0.5-2 μ g) were mixed and tubes incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. Non-specific binding was determined with 10^{-7} M GLP-1. Bound and unbound tracer were separated by vacuum filtration. The filters were counted in a γ -scintillation counter. The binding of the tracer in the absence of the test compounds and GLP-1 was set to 100%. A compound which does not compete with 5686.200-US

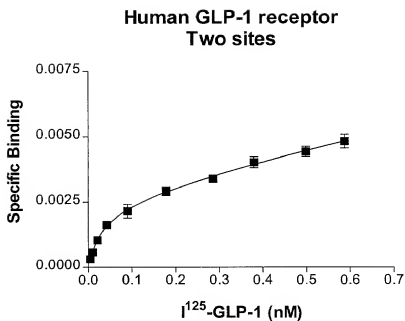
GLP-1 in a competition binding assay will not displace the tracer. Therefore, the tracer will display an unchanged binding of 100% in this assay whereas compounds of this invention that potentiate GLP-1 binding result in binding of the tracer in the range above 100% to 300% or above.

EXAMPLE 175

Saturation experiments, compounds stabilize another conformation of the receptor than that GLP-1 stabilize physiologically

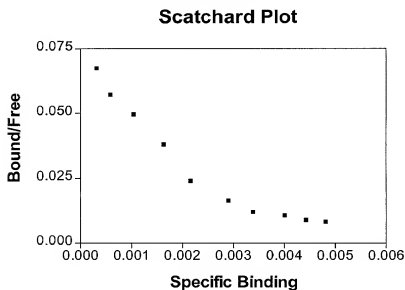
Plasma membranes were prepared as in example 172. Binding assays were carried out in filter microtiter plates (MADV N65, Millipore). The buffer was 50 mM HEPES, 5 mM EGTA, 5 mM $MgCl_2$, 0.005% Tween 20, pH 7.4. GLP-1 and test compounds was dissolved and diluted as described in example 172. Tracer (labelled GLP-1) was prepared as described in (28) and diluted in buffer. 165 μ l buffer + 10 μ l DMSO with or without 10 μ M 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (example 2) + 25 μ l of different dilutions of tracer + 25 μ l plasma membrane (0.5-2 μ g) was mixed and plates incubated at 25°C for 2 hours. Non-specific binding was determined with 10^{-6} M GLP-1. Bound and unbound tracer were separated by vacuum filtration (Millipore vacuum manifold). The plates were washed once with 150 μ l buffer/ well, and air dried for a couple of hours, whereupon filters were separated from the plates using a Millipore Puncher. The filters were counted in a γ -scintillation counter. The specific binding (total minus non-specific) was then plotted vs the concentration of tracer added. A curve fitting program (eg the saturation/scatchard template in GraphPad Prism®) then determined the number of binding sites and the affinity. There may be more than one binding site with different affinities. When such an experiment is performed with GLP-1 one may observe one or two different binding sites dependent on the temperature at which the experiment is performed.

A saturation plot for GLP-1 in the absence of 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-quinoxaline (example 2) at 30°C resulted in the following result:

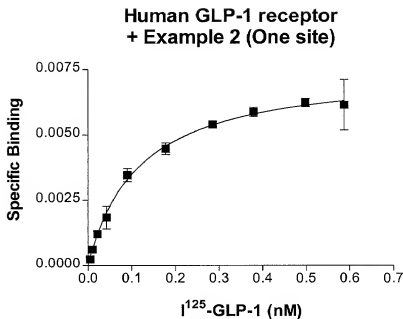


The data were equivalent with two binding sites: one had a K_d of 790 pM and a B_{max} of 6.5 pM. The other a K_d of 26 pM and a B_{max} of 2.0 pM.

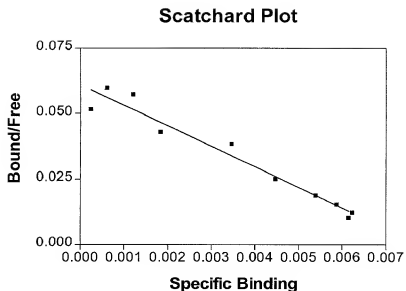
Also the Scatchard plot clearly shows the presence of two binding sites as one straight line can not be fitted through the data points.



- 10 A saturation plot for GLP-1 in the presence of 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)-quinoxaline (example 2) at 30°C resulted in the following:



These data were in agreement with one binding site, K_d 120 pM and B_{max} of 7.5 pM. Also, the Scatchard plot clearly show that in the presence of 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (example 2) there is now only one class of binding sites with affinity for GLP-1. And this binding site is characterized by having a affinity for GLP-1 between the high and low existing in the absence of 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (example 2). 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (example 2) has then changed the affinity of the receptor for GLP-1 meaning that the conformation of the receptor must be different otherwise it would not have a changed affinity for GLP-1. Example 172 shows that the conformation that 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (example 2) stabilises must be an active conformation otherwise 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (example 2) would not be an agonist.



EXAMPLE 176

- 5 Stimulation of cAMP formation in a cell line expressing the cloned human Glucagon receptor, compounds selective for the GLP-1 receptor

The procedure in example 172 was followed except a cell line using the human glucagon receptor was used (P. Madsen, L. B. Knudsen, F. C. Wiberg and R. D. Carr, Discovery and SAR of the first non-peptide competitive glucagon receptor antagonist. *J. Med. Chem.*, 41 (1998), 5150-57.)

In this assay glucagon was measured with an EC_{50} of 8.4 pM. 6,7-dichloro-2-trifluoromethyl-3-(5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-ylsulfanyl)quinoxaline (example 2) had no measurable activity. Concentrations tested was up to 100 μ M.

From the foregoing, it will be appreciated that, although specific embodiments of the invention have been described herein for the purposes of illustration, various modifications may be made without deviating from the spirit and scope of the invention as defined by the appended claims.

References

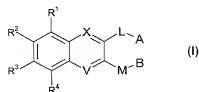
1. Holst JJ. Annual Review of Physiology 1997;59:257-271.
2. Nauck MA, Heimesaat MM, Ørskov C, Holst JJ, Ebert R, Creutzfeldt W. Preserved incretin activity of GLP-1(7-36amide) but not of synthetic human GIP in patients with type 2-diabetes mellitus. J. Clin. Invest. 1993;91:301-307.
3. Willms B, Werner J, Holst JJ, Ørskov C, Creutzfeldt W, Nauck M. Gastric emptying, glucose responses, and insulin secretion after a liquid test meal: effects of exogenous GLP-1(7-36)amide in type 2 (noninsulin-dependent) diabetic patients. J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab. 1996;81:327-332.
4. Qualmann C, Nauck M, Holst JJ, Ørskov C, Creutzfeldt W. Insulinotropic actions of intravenous glucagon-like peptide-1 [7-36 amide] in the fasting state in healthy subjects. Acta Diabetologica, 1995;32:13-16.
5. Nathan DM, Schreiber E, Fogel H, Mojsov S, Habener JF. Insulinotropic action of GLP-1-87-37) in diabetic and non-diabetic subjects. Diabetes care 1992;15:270-276.
6. Nauck MA, Kleine N, Ørskov C, Holst JJ, Willms B, Creutzfeldt W. Normalization of fasting hyperglycemia by exogenous GLP-1 (7-36amide) in type 2-diabetic patients. Diabetologia 1993;36:741-744.
7. Kreyman B, Ghatai MA, Williams G, Bloom SR. GLP-1 7-36: a physiological incretin in man. Lancet 1987;II:1300-1304.
8. Rachman J, Barrow BA, Levy JC, Turner RC. Near-normalization of diurnal glucose concentrations by continuous administration of GLP-1 in subjects with NIDDM. Diabetologia 1997;40(2):205-211.
9. Gutniak MK, Linde B, Holst JJ, Efendic S. Subcutaneous injection of the incretin hormone GLP-1 abolishes postprandial glycemia in NIDDM. Diabetes Care 1994;17(9):1039-1044.
10. Nauck MA, Wollschläger D, Werner J, Holst JJ, Ørskov C, Creutzfeldt W, Willms B. Effects of subcutaneous GLP-1(7-36)amide in patients with NIDDM. Diabetologia 1996;39:1546-1553.
11. Creutzfeldt W, Kleine N, Willms B, Ørskov C, Holst JJ, Nauck MA. Glucagonostatic actions and reduction of fasting hyperglycemia by exogenous glucagon-liem, peptide-1(7-36amide) in type I diabetic patients. Diabetes Care 1996;19:580-586.

12. Fehmann, H.C. and Habener, J.F.. Insulinotropic hormone GLP-1-(7-37) stimulation of proinsulin gene expression and proinsulin biosynthesis in insulinoma β TC1-cells. *Endocrinology* 1992;130:159-66.
13. Wang, Y., Egan, J.M., Raygada, M., Nativ, O., Roth, J. and Montrose-Rafizadeh, M.
5 GLP-1 affects gene transcription and mRNA stability of components of the insulin secretory system in RIN 1046-38 cells. *Endocrinology* 1995;136:4910-4917.
14. Wang, Y., Perfetti, R., Greig, N., Holloway, H.W., DeOre K.A., Montrose-Rafizadeh, M., Elahi, D. and Egan, J.M. GLP-1 can reverse the age-related decline in glucose tolerance in rats. *J.Clin.Invest.* 1997;99:2883-2889.
- 10 15. Edvell, A., Lindström, P.. Initiation of increased pancreatic islet growth in young normoglycaemic mice (Umeå +/?). *Endocrinology* 1999;140(2):778-783.
16. Buteau, J., Roduit, R., Susini, S., Prentki, M.. GLP-1 promotes DNA synthesis, activates phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase and increases transcription factor pancreatic and duodenal homeobox gene 1 (PDX-1) DNA binding activity in beta (INS-1)-cells. *Diabetologia*
15 1999;42(7):856-864.
17. Gang, X., Stoffers, D.A., Habener, J.F., Bonner-Weir, S.. Exendin-4 stimulates both beta-cell replication and neogenesis, resulting in increased beta-cell mass and improved glucose tolerance in diabetic rats. *Diabetes* 1999;48:2270-2276.
18. Nauck M, Stöckmann R, Ebert R, Creutzfeldt W: Reduced incretin effect in type-2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetes. *Diabetologia* 29: 46-52, 1986.
- 20 19. Holst JJ, Gromada J, Nauck MA: The pathogenesis of non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus involves a defective expression of the GIP receptor. *Diabetologia* 40: 984-986, 1997.
20. Nauck MA, Heimesaat MM, Ørskov C, Holst JJ, Ebert R, Creutzfeldt W: Preserved incretin activity of GLP-1 (7-36amide) but not of synthetic human GIP in patients with type
25 2-diabetes mellitus. *J Clin Invest* 36: 741-744, 1993.
21. Nauck MA, Heimesaat MM, Ørskov C, Holst JJ, Ebert R, Creutzfeldt W. Preserved incretin activity of GLP-1(7-36amide) but not of synthetic human GIP in patients with type 2-diabetes mellitus. *J. Clin. Invest.* 1993;91:301-307.
- 30 22. Flint, A., Raben, A., Astrup, A., Holst, J.J. GLP-1 promotes satiety and suppresses energy intake in humans. *J. Clin. Invest.* 1998;101:515-520.

23. Näslund, E., Gutniak, M.K., Skogar, S., Rössner, S. and Hellström, P.M. GLP-1 increases the period of postprandial satiety and slows gastric emptying in obese humans. *Am. J. Clin. Nutr.* 1998 *in press*.
24. Näslund, E. and Hellström, P.M. GLP-1 in the pathogenesis of obesity. *Drug News Perspect.* 1998;11(2):92-97.
25. Ranganath, L.R., Beethy, J.M., Moragn, L.M., Wright, J.M., Howland, R. and Marks, V. Attenuated GLP-1 secretion in obesity: cause or consequence. *Gut* 1996;38:916-919.
26. Näslund, E., Grybäck, P., Backman, L., Jacobsson, H., Holst, J.J., Theodorsson, E. and Hellström, P.M. Small bowel gut hormones: correlation to fasting antroduodenal motility and gastric emptying. *Dig. Dis. Sci.* 1998 *in press*.
27. Deacon, C.F., M.A. Nauck, M. Toft-Nielsen, L. Pridal, B. Willms and J.J. Holst, Both subcutaneous and intravenously administered GLP-1 are rapidly degraded from the N-terminus in type-2 diabetic patients and in healthy subjects, *Diabetes* 1995; 44: 1126.
28. Knudsen, L.B., and Pridal, I., GLP-1(9-36)amide is a major metabolite of GLP-1(7-36)amide after in vivo administration to dogs and it acts as an antagonist on the pancreatic receptor. *Eur. J. Pharm.* 1996; 318: 429-435.
29. Horn, F., Bywater, R., Krause, G., Kuipers, W., Oliveira, L., Paiva, A.C.M., Sander, C. and Vriend, G., The interaction of class B G Protein-Coupled receptors with their hormones. *Receptors and Channels* 1998; 5: 305-314.
30. Adelhorst, K., Heedegaard, B.B., Knudsen, L.B. and Kirk, O., Structure activity studies of GLP-1, *J. Biol. Chem.* 1994; 269(9): 6275-6279.
31. Gether, U. and Kobilka, B.K, G protein-coupled receptors. II. Mechanism of agonist activation. *J. Biol. Chem.* 1998; 273(29): 17979-17982.
32. Hulme, E.C., *Receptor-Ligand interactions, A practical approach.* IRL Press 1992: 86-89.

CLAIMS

1. A compound of the general formula (I):



wherein

R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, -OR⁵, lower alkyl, -SR⁵, -S(O)₂NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)₂R⁵, -S(O)R⁵, -C(O)NR⁵R⁶, -CH₂OR⁵, -CH₂NR⁵R⁶, -NR⁵R⁶, -C(O)R⁵ or -C(O)OR⁵,

wherein R⁵ and R⁶ independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R⁵ and R⁶ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

one of X and V is =N-, and the other is =CD- or =N-,

wherein D is hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, -OR⁷, -NR⁷R⁸, lower alkyl, aryl, -C(O)NR⁷R⁸, -CH₂OR⁷, -CH₂NR⁷R⁸ or -C(O)OR⁷,

5686.200-US

wherein R^7 and R^8 independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R^7 and R^8 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

L and M independently are a valence bond, -(CH₂)_mS(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mO(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mCH=CH(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC≡C(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mCHR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mNR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(O)NR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(CH₂)_mC(O)NR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mOC(O)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(O)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mC(NOR⁹)(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mNR⁹S(O)₂(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mS(O)₂NR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mCHOR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -(CH₂)_mP(O)(OR⁹)O(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mCONR⁹(CH₂)_n-, -S(O)₂(CH₂)_mOC(O)NR⁹(CH₂)_nC(O)O(CH₂)_n-, -NR⁹O(CH₂)_n-, -NR⁹NR^{9a}C(O)NR^{9b}(CH₂)_n-, -NR⁹(CH₂)_mNR^{9a}C(O)(CH₂)_n- or -NR⁹(CR^{9a}R^{9b})_n-,

wherein R^9 , R^{9a} and R^{9b} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen,

lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

- 5 R^{3c} and R^{3d} independently are hydrogen or lower alkyl,

m, n and r independently are 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4,

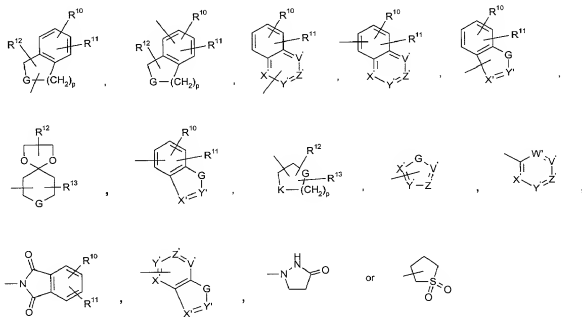
A and B independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CF₃, -CF₂CF₃, -CN, -NO₂, lower alkyl, lower

- 10 alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, hydroxy,

in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

15

or A and B independently are



wherein

20

p is 1, 2 or 3,

X' is -N= or -CR¹⁴=,

Y' is -N= or -CR¹⁵=,

5 Z' is -N= or -CR¹⁶=,

V' is -N= or -CR¹⁷=,

W' is -N= or -CR¹⁸=,

10

G is -CR^{18a}R^{18b}-, -N⁺O⁻-, -NR¹⁹-, -O- or -S-,

K is -CR^{18c}R^{18d}-, -NR²⁰-, -O- or -S-,

- 15 R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷, R¹⁸, R^{18a}, R^{18b}, R^{18c} and R^{18d} independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -OCH₂CF₃, -OCF₂CHF₂, -NO₂, -OR²¹, -NR²¹R²², lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower al-
- 20 kynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, -SCF₃, -SR²¹, -CHF₂, -OCHF₂, -OS(O)₂CF₃, -OS(O)₂R²¹, -NR²¹S(O)₂R²², -S(O)₂NR²¹R²², -S(O)NR²¹R²², -S(O)₂R²¹, -S(O)R²¹, -CH₂C(O)NR²¹R²², -OCH₂C(O)NR²¹R²², -CH₂OR²¹, -CH₂NR²¹R²², -OC(O)R²¹, -S(O)₂NR²¹(CH₃)C(O)OR²², -C(O)NR²¹(CH₃)C(O)OR²² or -C(O)NR²¹R²² where R¹² and R¹³
- 25 furthermore independently may represent oxo, or two of the groups R¹⁰ to R^{18d} when defined in the same ring together may form a bridge -O(CH₂)_qO- or -CH₂O(CH₂)_tO-,

- in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl,
- 30 -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

wherein R²¹ and R²² independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower

5686.200-US

alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R²¹ and R²² together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

R¹⁹ and R²⁰ independently are hydrogen, -OR²³, -NR²³R²⁴, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, -C(O)NR²³R²⁴ or -C(O)OR²³,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

wherein R²³ and R²⁴ independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkynyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, aryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkyl-lower alkynyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkenyl, cycloalkenyl-lower alkynyl, aryl-lower alkyl, aryl-lower alkenyl, aryl-lower alkynyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkenyl, heterocyclyl-lower alkynyl, heteroaryl-lower alkyl, heteroaryl-lower alkenyl or heteroaryl-lower alkynyl, or R²³ and R²⁴ together with the nitrogen atom to which they are bound form a 3 to 8 membered heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or more further heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and optionally containing one or more double bonds,

in which the cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, heterocyclyl, aryl and heteroaryl rings may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃,

q is 1, 2 or 3,

s is 0, 1, 2 or 3,

or

A and B may be connected and together form a C₂₋₃-alkylene radical,

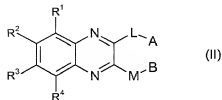
with the provisos that

when L represents a group wherein n or r is 0, A is not halogen, -CN or -NO₂, and

when M represents a group wherein n or r is 0, B is not halogen, -CN or -NO₂,

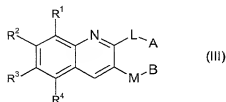
as well as any optical or geometric isomer or tautomeric form thereof including mixtures of these or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. A compound according to claim 1 of the general formula (II):



wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, L, M, A and B are as defined in claim 1.

3. A compound according to claim 1 of the general formula (III):



5 wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , L, M, A and B are as defined in claim 1.

4. A compound according to anyone of the preceding claims, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, -S(O)₂NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)NR⁵R⁶, -S(O)₂R⁵, -C(O)NR⁵R⁶, -SR⁵, -C(O)R⁵ or -C(O)OR⁵, wherein R^5 and R^6 are as defined in claim 1.

5. A compound according to claim 4, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, lower alkyl, lower alkoxy, -SR⁵, -S(O)₂R⁵, -C(O)OR⁵, -C(O)R⁵, -NO₂ or -C(O)NR⁵R⁶, wherein R^5 and R^6 are as defined in claim 1.

6. A compound according to claim 4 or 5, wherein R^5 and R^6 independently are hydrogen, phenyl or lower alkyl, wherein phenyl optionally is substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃

7. A compound according to claim 5, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CN, -CF₃, -NO₂, -C(O)phenyl, lower alkyl or lower alkoxy, wherein phenyl optionally is substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, -OH, -CH₂OH, -NO₂, -CN, -C(O)OH, -O-lower alkyl, -C(O)OCH₃, -C(O)NH₂, -OCH₂C(O)NH₂, -NH₂, -N(CH₃)₂, -CH₂N(CH₃)₂, -SO₂NH₂, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ and -OCF₃.

8. A compound according to claim 7, wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 independently are hydrogen, halogen, -CF₃, -NO₂ or -C(O)phenyl.

9. A compound according to anyone of the claims 4 to 8, wherein three of the groups R^1 to R^4 are hydrogen and one of them is different from hydrogen.

10. A compound according to anyone of the claims 4 to 8, wherein two of the groups R^1 to R^4 are hydrogen and the other two are different from hydrogen.

11. A compound according to claim 9 or 10, wherein R^1 and R^4 are both hydrogen.

12. A compound according to claim 9, wherein one of R^1 to R^4 is halogen.

13. A compound according to claim 10, wherein R^2 and R^3 are both halogen.

14. A compound according to claim 13, wherein R^2 and R^3 are both chloro.

15. A compound according to claim 9, wherein R^3 is $-\text{NO}_2$.

16. A compound according to claim 10, wherein R^2 and R^3 are both $-\text{NO}_2$.

17. A compound according to anyone of the preceding claims, wherein L is a valence bond,
 $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{S}(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{S}(\text{O})(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{CHR}^9(\text{CH}_2)_n-$,
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{C}(\text{O})(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^9(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_n-$,
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^9(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_n-$ or $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{CONR}^9(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, wherein m, n, r
 and R^9 are as defined in claim 1.

18. A compound according to claim 17, wherein L is a valence bond, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})-$,
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})(\text{CH}_2)_n-$,
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ or
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CONH}(\text{CH}_2)_n-$, wherein n is as defined in claim 1.

19. A compound according to claim 18, wherein L is a valence bond, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$,
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{CH}_2-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_2-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})(\text{CH}_2)_2-$,
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_4\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ or $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CONH}(\text{CH}_2)_2-$.

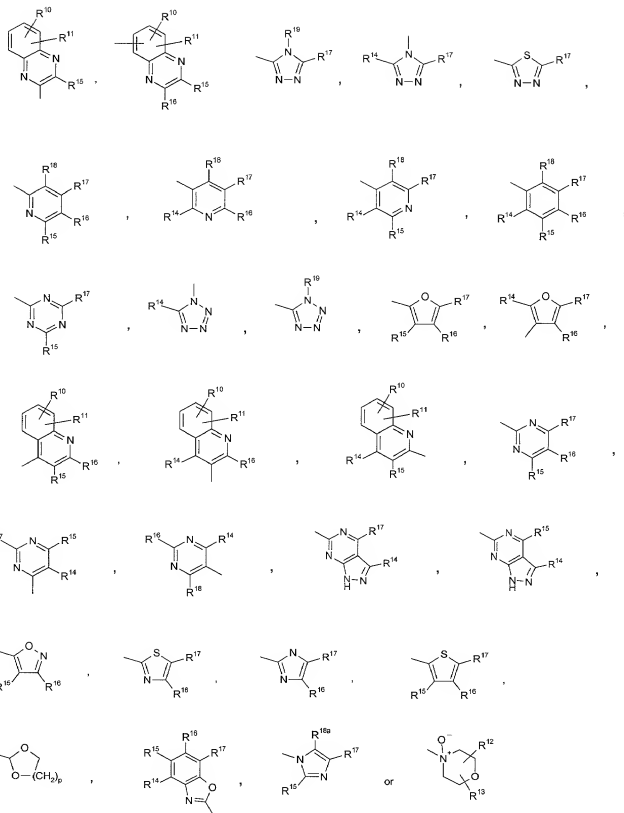
20. A compound according to claim 19, wherein L is $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{CH}_2-$ or $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$.

21. A compound according to anyone of the preceding claims, wherein A is lower alkyl, halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, cycloalkyl,

- 5 in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OCH}_3$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$ and $-\text{OCF}_3$,

or A is



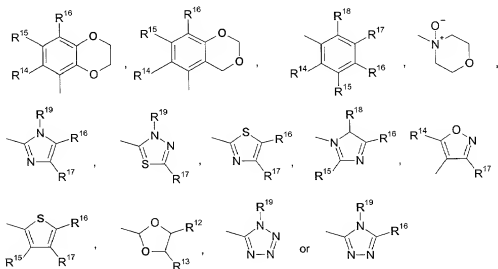


wherein R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷, R¹⁸, R^{18a} and R¹⁹ are as defined in claim 1.

22. A compound according to claim 21, wherein A is lower alkyl, halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OH}$, cycloalkyl,

in which the cycloalkyl ring may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, lower alkyl, lower alkanoyl, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OH}$, $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OCH}_3$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NH}_2$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{CF}_3$ and $-\text{OCF}_3$,

or A is

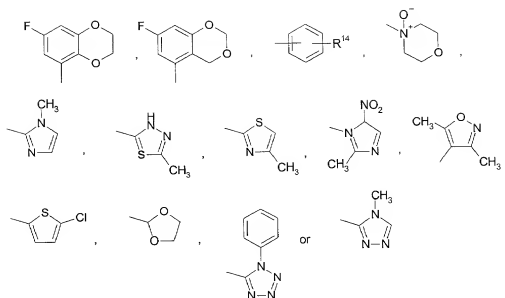


wherein R^{12} to R^{19} are as defined in claim 1.

23. A compound according to claim 22, wherein R^{12} and R^{13} independently are selected from hydrogen and lower alkyl, R^{14} to R^{18} independently are selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl, $-\text{NO}_2$, halogen, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{CONR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$, $-\text{OCHF}_2$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^{21}(\text{CH}_2)_s\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{22}$, wherein s is 1 or 2, R^{21} and R^{22} independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl or pyridyl, and R^{19} is hydrogen, lower alkyl or phenyl.

24. A compound according to claim 23, wherein A is lower alkyl, halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OH}$, cycloalkyl,

or A is



wherein R^{14} is $-S(O)_2CH_3$, $-CONH_2$, $-CONH$ -pyridyl, $-OCHF_2$ or $-S(O)_2NH(CH_2)_2C(O)OCH_3$.

25. A compound according to claim 24, wherein A is lower alkyl.

26. A compound according to anyone of the preceding claims, wherein M is a valence bond, $-(CH_2)_mS(CH_2)_n$, $-(CH_2)_mS(O)_2(CH_2)_n$, $-(CH_2)_mNR^9(CH_2)_n$, $-NR^9(CR^{9c}R^{9d})_n$, $-(CH_2)_mC(O)O(CH_2)_n$, $-NR^9O(CH_2)_n$, $-(CH_2)_mCH=CH(CH_2)_n$, $-NR^9NR^{9a}C(O)NR^{9b}(CH_2)_n$, $-O-$ or $-(CH_2)_mCHR^9(CH_2)_n$ wherein m, n, R^9 , R^{9a} , R^{9b} , R^{9c} and R^{9d} are as defined in claim 1.

27. A compound according to claim 26, wherein M is a valence bond, $-C(O)O-$, $-CH=CH-$, $-N(CH_3)-$, $-CH_2S(O)_2-$, $-NH-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-N(CH_3)O-$, $NHOCH_2-$, $-S-$, $-NHCH_2CH_2NHC(O)-$, $-NHC(CH_3)_2-$, $-CH_2S-$, $-NHCH_2-$, $-NHCH_2CH_2-$, $-O-$ or $-CH_2-$.

28. A compound according to claim 27, wherein M is a valence bond, $-C(O)O-$, $-CH=CH-$, $-N(CH_3)-$, $-CH_2S(O)_2-$, $-NH-$, $-CH_2CH_2-$, $-N(CH_3)O-$, $NHOCH_2-$, $-S-$, $-NHCH_2CH_2NHC(O)-$ or $-NHC(CH_3)_2-$.

29. A compound according to claim 28, wherein M is a valence bond, $-NH-$ or $-N(CH_3)-$.

30. A compound according to anyone of the preceding claims, wherein B is hydrogen, halogen, $-CF_3$, $-CF_2CF_3$, lower alkyl, cycloalkyl,

5

Chemical structures 1-12 are shown, representing various substituted heterocyclic compounds. The structures include:

- Structure 1: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N¹) and substituents R¹² and R¹³.
- Structure 2: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N¹) and substituents R¹², R¹³, and R²⁹.
- Structure 3: A 5-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N¹) and substituents R¹⁴ and R¹⁷.
- Structure 4: A 5-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N¹⁹) and substituents R¹⁷ and R¹⁹.
- Structure 5: A 5-membered ring with a sulfur atom (S) and substituents R¹⁵ and R¹⁶.
- Structure 6: A 6-membered ring with a sulfur atom (S) and substituents R¹⁶ and R¹⁷.
- Structure 7: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N²⁰) and substituents R¹², R¹³, and R²⁰.
- Structure 8: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N²⁰) and substituents R¹², R¹³, and R²⁰.
- Structure 9: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N²⁰) and substituents R¹², R¹³, and R²⁰.
- Structure 10: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N¹⁹) and substituents R¹⁰, R¹¹, and R¹².
- Structure 11: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N¹⁹) and substituents R¹⁰, R¹¹, and R¹².
- Structure 12: A 7-membered ring with a nitrogen atom (N¹⁹) and substituents R¹⁰, R¹¹, and R¹².

10

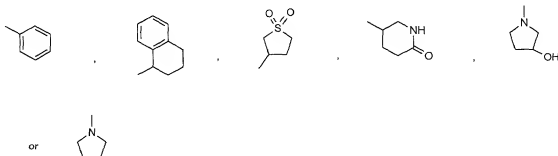
15

The image displays five chemical structures representing different substituted cyclohexanes and cyclopentanes, separated by commas. The first structure is a cyclohexane ring with substituents R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷, and R¹⁸. The second structure is a cyclohexane ring with substituents R¹⁰, R¹¹, and R¹². The third structure is a cyclohexane ring with a sulfone group (SO₂) and substituents R¹² and R¹³. The fourth structure is a cyclopentane ring with substituents R¹² and R¹³. The fifth structure is a cyclopentane ring with substituents R¹⁹, R¹², and R¹³, preceded by the word "or".

wherein R¹⁰ to R¹⁹ are as defined in claim 1.

32. A compound according to claim 31, wherein R¹⁰ and R¹¹ independently are hydrogen,
 5 lower alkyl, halogen, -OCF₃, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ or -NO₂, R¹² and R¹³ independently are hydrogen, hydroxy or lower alkyl, R¹⁴ to R¹⁸ independently are hydrogen, lower alkyl, halogen, -OCF₃, -OCHF₂, -CF₃ or -NO₂, and R¹⁹ is hydrogen or lower alkyl.

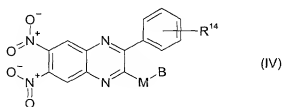
33. A compound according to claim 32, wherein B is hydrogen, -CF₃, lower alkyl, cycloalkyl,



34. A compound according to claim 33, wherein B is -CF₃ or lower alkyl.

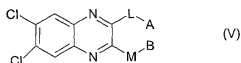
35. A compound according to claim 34, wherein B is lower alkyl.

36. A compound of the general formula (IV):



- 20 wherein M, B and R¹⁴ are as defined in any one of the claims 1 or 26 to 35.

37. A compound of the general formula (V):



- 5 wherein L is $-S(CH_2)_n-$, $-S(O)(CH_2)_n-$ or $-S(O)_2(CH_2)_n-$, and n, A, M and B are as defined in anyone of the claims 1 or 21 to 35.

38. A compound according to claim 36 or 37, wherein M is a valence bond and B is $-CF_3$ or lower alkyl.

10

39. A compound according to claim 36 or 37, wherein M is $-NR^9$, wherein R^9 is hydrogen or lower alkyl and B is lower alkyl or



, wherein R^{14} is hydrogen, lower alkyl, halogen, $-OCF_3$, $-OCHF_2$, $-CF_3$ or $-NO_2$.

15

40. A compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 39 characterised by having a molecular weight of up to 1000, preferably of up to 600.

41. A compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 40 characterised by having an EC_{50} value as determined by method 1 or 2 according to example 172 of less than 25 μM , preferably
20 of less than 10 μM and more preferred of less than 2 μM .

42. A non-peptide GLP-1 agonist which activates the human GLP-1 receptor.

43. A non-peptide GLP-1 agonist according to claim 42 which activates the human GLP-1
25 receptor without competing with GLP-1 in a competition binding assay.

44. A non-peptide agonist according to claim 42 or 43 which in a competition binding assay potentiates the binding of GLP-1 to the human GLP-1 receptor.

45. A non-peptide GLP-1 agonist according to anyone of the claims 42 to 44 which stabilises an active conformation of the human GLP-1 that is different from the one(s) which GLP-1 stabilises.

5 46. A non-peptide agonist according to anyone of the claims 42 to 45 which is a full agonist.

47. A non-peptide agonist according to anyone of the claims 42 to 45 which is a partial agonist having an E_{max} of less than 100%, preferably of less than 90%, more preferably of less than 80%, and even more preferably in the range of 35 to 75% of that of GLP-1 as determined by
10 method 1 or 2 according to example 172.

48. A non-peptide agonist according to anyone of the claims 42 to 47 which has at least a 10 fold selectivity towards the human GLP-1 receptor compared to the human glucagon receptor and/or the human GIP receptor.

15

49. A non-peptide GLP-1 agonist according to anyone of the claims 42 to 48 where the agonistic effect mediated by the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist can be antagonised by a GLP-1 antagonist.

20

50. A non-peptide GLP-1 agonist according to claim 49 where the agonistic effect mediated by the non-peptide GLP-1 agonist can be antagonised by 6-(2,5-dichlorobenzyl)-1-hydroxy-2-[2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]-1,6-dihydropyrrolo[3',4',5,6]pyrido[3,4-b]indol-3(2H)-one.

51. A compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for use as a medicament.

25

52. A pharmaceutical composition comprising, as an active ingredient, at least one compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 together with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or excipients.

30

53. A pharmaceutical composition according to claim 52 in unit dosage form, comprising from about 0.05 mg to about 1000 mg, preferably from about 0.1 mg to about 500 mg and especially preferred from about 0.5 mg to about 200 mg of the compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50.

54. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders or diseases wherein an activation of the human GLP-1 receptor is beneficial.

- 5 55. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of a metabolic disorder wherein an activation of the human GLP-1 receptor is beneficial.

56. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a
10 medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of IGT.

57. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of Type 2 diabetes.

- 15 58. Use according to claim 57 for the preparation of a medicament for the delaying or prevention of the progression from IGT to Type 2 diabetes.

59. Use according to claim 57 for the preparation of a medicament for the delaying or prevention of the progression from non-insulin requiring Type 2 diabetes to insulin requiring
20 Type 2 diabetes.

60. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of Type 1 diabetes.

- 25 61. Use according to anyone of the claims 54 to 60 in a regimen which additionally comprises treatment with another antidiabetic.

62. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of obesity.

30

63. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of obesity in a regimen which additionally comprises treatment with another antiobesity agent.

64. Use of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 for the preparation of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of an appetite regulation or energy expenditure disorder.
- 5 65. A method for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders or diseases wherein an activation of the human GLP-1 receptor is beneficial the method comprising administering to a subject in need thereof an effective amount of a compound according to anyone of the claims 1 to 50 or a pharmaceutical composition according to claim 52 or 53.
- 10 66. The method according to claim 65 wherein the effective amount of the compound is in the range of from about 0.05 mg to about 2000 mg, preferably from about 0.1 mg to about 1000 mg and especially preferred from about 0.5 mg to about 500 mg per day.

ABSTRACT**NON-PEPTIDE GLP-1 AGONISTS**

- 5 Novel non-peptide GLP-1 agonists, pharmaceutical compositions comprising them, use of the non-peptide GLP-1 agonists for the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions and methods for the treatment and/or prevention of disorders and diseases wherein an activation of the human GLP-1 receptor is beneficial, especially metabolic disorders such as IGT, Type 1 diabetes, Type 2 diabetes and obesity.

10

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000
1001
1002
1003
1004
1005
1006
1007
1008
1009
1010
1011
1012
1013
1014
1015
1016
1017
1018
1019
1020
1021
1022
1023
1024
1025
1026
1027
1028
1029
1030
1031
1032
1033
1034
1035
1036
1037
1038
1039
1040
1041
1042
1043
1044
1045
1046
1047
1048
1049
1050
1051
1052
1053
1054
1055
1056
1057
1058
1059
1060
1061
1062
1063
1064
1065
1066
1067
1068
1069
1070
1071
1072
1073
1074
1075
1076
1077
1078
1079
1080
1081
1082
1083
1084
1085
1086
1087
1088
1089
1090
1091
1092
1093
1094
1095
1096
1097
1098
1099
1100
1101
1102
1103
1104
1105
1106
1107
1108
1109
1110
1111
1112
1113
1114
1115
1116
1117
1118
1119
1120
1121
1122
1123
1124
1125
1126
1127
1128
1129
1130
1131
1132
1133
1134
1135
1136
1137
1138
1139
1140
1141
1142
1143
1144
1145
1146
1147
1148
1149
1150
1151
1152
1153
1154
1155
1156
1157
1158
1159
1160
1161
1162
1163
1164
1165
1166
1167
1168
1169
1170
1171
1172
1173
1174
1175
1176
1177
1178
1179
1180
1181
1182
1183
1184
1185
1186
1187
1188
1189
1190
1191
1192
1193
1194
1195
1196
1197
1198
1199
1200
1201
1202
1203
1204
1205
1206
1207
1208
1209
1210
1211
1212
1213
1214
1215
1216
1217
1218
1219
1220
1221
1222
1223
1224
1225
1226
1227
1228
1229
1230
1231
1232
1233
1234
1235
1236
1237
1238
1239
1240
1241
1242
1243
1244
1245
1246
1247
1248
1249
1250
1251
1252
1253
1254
1255
1256
1257
1258
1259
1260
1261
1262
1263
1264
1265
1266
1267
1268
1269
1270
1271
1272
1273
1274
1275
1276
1277
1278
1279
1280
1281
1282
1283
1284
1285
1286
1287
1288
1289
1290
1291
1292
1293
1294
1295
1296
1297
1298
1299
1300
1301
1302
1303
1304
1305
1306
1307
1308
1309
1310
1311
1312
1313
1314
1315
1316
1317
1318
1319
1320
1321
1322
1323
1324
1325
1326
1327
1328
1329
1330
1331
1332
1333
1334
1335
1336
1337
1338
1339
1340
1341
1342
1343
1344
1345
1346
1347
1348
1349
1350
1351
1352
1353
1354
1355
1356
1357
1358
1359
1360
1361
1362
1363
1364
1365
1366
1367
1368
1369
1370
1371
1372
1373
1374
1375
1376
1377
1378
1379
1380
1381
1382
1383
1384
1385
1386
1387
1388
1389
1390
1391
1392
1393
1394
1395
1396
1397
1398
1399
1400
1401
1402
1403
1404
1405
1406
1407
1408
1409
1410
1411
1412
1413
1414
1415
1416
1417
1418
1419
1420
1421
1422
1423
1424
1425
1426
1427
1428
1429
1430
1431
1432
1433
1434
1435
1436
1437
1438
1439
1440
1441
1442
1443
1444
1445
1446
1447
1448
1449
1450
1451
1452
1453
1454
1455
1456
1457
1458
1459
1460
1461
1462
1463
1464
1465
1466
1467
1468
1469
1470
1471
1472
1473
1474
1475
1476
1477
1478
1479
1480
1481
1482
1483
1484
1485
1486
1487
1488
1489
1490
1491
1492
1493
1494
1495
1496
1497
1498
1499
1500
1501
1502
1503
1504
1505
1506
1507
1508
1509
1510
1511
1512
1513
1514
1515
1516
1517
1518
1519
1520
1521
1522
1523
1524
1525
1526
1527
1528
1529
1530
1531
1532
1533
1534
1535
1536
1537
1538
1539
1540
1541
1542
1543
1544
1545
1546
1547
1548
1549
1550
1551
1552
1553
1554
1555
1556
1557
1558
1559
1560
1561
1562
1563
1564
1565
1566
1567
1568
1569
1570
1571
1572
1573
1574
1575
1576
1577
1578
1579
1580
1581
1582
1583
1584
1585
1586
1587
1588
1589
1590
1591
1592
1593
1594
1595
1596
1597
1598
1599
1600
1601
1602
1603
1604
1605
1606
1607
1608
1609
1610
1611
1612
1613
1614
1615
1616
1617
1618
1619
1620
1621
1622
1623
1624
1625
1626
1627
1628
1629
1630
1631
1632
1633
1634
1635
1636
1637
1638
1639
1640
1641
1642
1643
1644
1645
1646
1647
1648
1649
1650
1651
1652
1653
1654
1655
1656
1657
1658
1659
1660
1661
1662
1663
1664
1665
1666
1667
1668
1669
1670
1671
1672
1673
1674
1675
1676
1677
1678
1679
1680
1681
1682
1683
1684
1685
1686
1687
1688
1689
1690
1691
1692
1693
1694
1695
1696
1697
1698
1699
1700
1701
1702
1703
1704
1705
1706
1707
1708
1709
1710
1711
1712
1713
1714
1715
1716
1717
1718
1719
1720
1721
1722
1723
1724
1725
1726
1727
1728
1729
1730
1731
1732
1733
1734
1735
1736
1737
1738
1739
1740
1741
1742
1743
1744
1745
1746
1747
1748
1749
1750
1751
1752
1753
1754
1755
1756
1757
1758
1759
1760
1761
1762
1763
1764
1765
1766
1767
1768
1769
1770
1771
1772
1773
1774
1775
1776
1777
1778
1779
1780
1781
1782
1783
1784
1785
1786
1787
1788
1789
1790
1791
1792
1793
1794
1795
1796
1797
1798
1799
1800
1801
1802
1803
1804
1805
1806
1807
1808
1809
1810
1811
1812
1813
1814
1815
1816
1817
1818
1819
1820
1821
1822
1823
1824
1825
1826
1827
1828
1829
1830
1831
1832
1833
1834
1835
1836
1837
1838
1839
1840
1841
1842
1843
1844
1845
1846
1847
1848
1849
1850
1851
1852
1853
1854
1855
1856
1857
1858
1859
1860
1861
1862
1863
1864
1865
1866
1867
1868
1869
1870
1871
1872
1873
1874
1875
1876
1877
1878
1879
1880
1881
1882
1883
1884
1885
1886
1887
1888
1889
1890
1891
1892
1893
1894
1895
1896
1897
1898
1899
1900
1901
1902
1903
1904
1905
1906
1907
1908
1909
1910
1911
1912
1913
1914
1915
1916
1917
1918
1919
1920
1921
1922
1923
1924
1925
1926
1927
1928
1929
1930
1931
1932
1933
1934
1935
1936
1937
1938
1939
1940
1941
1942
1943
1944
1945
1946
1947
1948
1949
1950
1951
1952
1953
1954
1955
1956
1957
1958
1959
1960
1961
1962
1963
1964
1965
1966
1967
1968
1969
1970
1971
1972
1973
1974
1975
1976
1977
1978
1979
1980
1981
1982
1983
1984
1985
1986
1987
1988
1989
1990
1991
1992
1993
1994
1995
1996
1997
1998
1999
2000
2001
2002
2003
2004
2005
2006
2007
2008
2009
2010
2011
2012
2013
2014
2015
2016
2017
2018
2019
2020
2021
2022
2023
2024
2025
2026
2027
2028
2029
2030
2031
2032
2033
2034
2035
2036
2037
2038
2039
2040
2041
2042
2043
2044
2045
2046
2047
2048
2049
2050
2051
2052
2053
2054
2055
2056
2057
2058
2059
2060
2061
2062
2063
2064
2065
2066
2067
2068
2069
2070
2071
2072
2073
2074
2075
2076
2077
2078
2079
2080
2081
2082
2083
2084
2085
2086
2087
2088
2089
2090
2091
2092
2093
2094
2095
2096
2097
2098
2099
2100
2101
2102
2103
2104
2105
2106
2107
2108
2109
2110
2111
2112
2113
2114
2115
2116
2117
2118
2119
2120
2121
2122
2123
2124
2125
2126
2127
2128
2129
2130
2131
2132
2133
2134
2135
2136
2137
2138
2139
2140
2141
2142
2143
2144
2145
2146
2147
2148
2149
2150
2151
2152
2153
2154
2155
2156
2157
2158
2159
2160
2161
2162
2163
2164
2165
2166
2167
2168
2169
2170
2171
2172
2173
2174
2175
2176
2177
2178
2179
2180
2181
2182
2183
2184
2185
2186
2187
2188
2189
2190
2191
2192
2193
2194
2195
2196
2197
2198
2199
2200
2201
2202
2203
2204
2

COMBINED DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY
(Includes Reference to PCT International Applications)

Attorney's Docket Number:
5686.200-US

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

Non-Peptide GLP-1 Agonists

The specification of which (check only one item below):

☐ is attached hereto

☒ was filed as United States application

Application No. To Be Assigned

on January 14, 2000

and was amended

on

☐ was filed as PCT international application

Number

on

and was amended under PCT Article 19

on

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified specification, including the claims, as amended by an amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, §1.56.

I hereby claim priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, §119 of any provisional or foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate or of any PCT international applications(s) for patent or inventor's certificate or of any PCT international applications(s) designating at least one country other than the United States of America listed below and have also identified below any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate or any PCT international application(s) designating at least one country other than the United States of America filed by me on the same subject matter having a filing date before that of the application(s) of which priority is claimed:

PRIOR U.S. PROVISIONAL/FOREIGN/PCT APPLICATION(S) AND ANY PRIORITY CLAIMS UNDER 35 U.S.C. 119:

COUNTRY (if PCT, indicated "PCT")	APPLICATION NUMBER	DATE OF FILING (day, month, year)	PRIORITY CLAIMED UNDER 35 USC 119	
Denmark	PA 1999 00041	15 January 1999	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO
U.S.	60/116,116	15 January 1999	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO
			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO
			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO
			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO

COMBINED DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY
(Includes Reference to PCT International Applications)

Attorney's Docket Number:

5686.200-US

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code '120 of any United States application(s) or PCT international application(s) designating the United States of America that is/are listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application(s) is not disclosed in that/those prior application(s) in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, '112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, '1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application(s) and the national or PCT international filing date of this application.

PRIOR U.S. APPLICATIONS OR PCT INTERNATIONAL APPLICATIONS DESIGNATING THE U.S. FOR BENEFIT UNDER 35 U.S.C. 120:

U.S. APPLICATIONS		STATUS (Check one)		
U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER	U.S. FILING DATE	Patented	Pending	Abandoned

PCT APPLICATIONS DESIGNATING THE U.S.

APPLICATION NO	FILING DATE	US SERIAL NUMBERS ASSIGNED (if any)			

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith. Steve T. Zelson, Elias J. Lambris, Valeta A. Gregg, Carol E. Rozek, Robert L. Starnes, Reza Green, Reg. No. 30,335, Reg. No. 89,728, Reg. No. 35,127, Reg. No. 36,993, Reg. No. 41,324, Reg. No. 38,475

Send Correspondence to: Steve T. Zelson, Esq.

Novo Nordisk of North America, Inc.
405 Lexington Avenue, Suite 6400
New York, New York 10174-6400

Direct Telephone Calls To:

Steve T. Zelson
(212) 867-0123

1	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Teng	First Given Name Min	Second Given Name
	Residence & Citizenship	City San Diego	State or Foreign Country U.S.A.	Country of Citizenship China
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address 5185 Seachase	City San Diego	State & Zip Code/Country California 92130/U.S.A.
2	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Truesdale	First Given Name Larry	Second Given Name Kenneth
	Residence & Citizenship	City San Diego	State or Foreign Country U.S.A.	Country of Citizenship U.S.A.
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address 10382 Rue Chamberly	City San Diego	State & Zip Code/Country California 92131/U.S.A.
3	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Bhumralkar	First Given Name Dilip	Second Given Name
	Residence & Citizenship	City San Diego	State or Foreign Country U.S.A.	Country of Citizenship India
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address 7502 Charmant Drive, #616	City San Diego	State & Zip Code/Country California 92122/U.S.A.
4	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Kiel	First Given Name Dan	Second Given Name
	Residence & Citizenship	City San Diego	State or Foreign Country U.S.A.	Country of Citizenship U.S.A.
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address 11367 Alvarez Meadow Court	City San Diego	State & Zip Code/Country California 92126/U.S.A.

COMBINED DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY (Includes Reference to PCT International Applications)				Attorney's Docket Number: 5686.200-US
5	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Johnson	First Given Name Michael	Second Given Name D.
	Residence & Citizenship	City Cardiff	State or Foreign Country U.S.A.	Country of Citizenship U.S.A.
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address 2150 Oxford Avenue	City Cardiff	Zip Code/Country 92007/U.S.A.
6	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Thomas	First Given Name Christine	Second Given Name
	Residence & Citizenship	City San Diego	State or Foreign Country U.S.A.	Country of Citizenship U.S.A.
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address 3550 Lebon Drive, #6415	City San Diego	Zip Code/Country 92122/U.S.A.
7	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Jorgensen	First Given Name Anker	Second Given Name Steen
	Residence & Citizenship	City Copenhagen O	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Denmark
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Bryggergade 6, 1st Floor, #2	City DK-2100 Copenhagen O	Country Denmark
	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Madsen	First Given Name Peter	Second Given Name
	Residence & Citizenship	City Bagsvaerd	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Denmark
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Ulvbjerg 7	City DK-2880 Bagsvaerd	Country Denmark
	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Olesen	First Given Name Preben	Second Given Name Houlberg
	Residence & Citizenship	City Copenhagen NV	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Denmark
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Orevadsvej 20	City DK-2400 Copenhagen NV	State & Zip Code/Country Denmark
10	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Knudsen	First Given Name Liselotte	Second Given Name Bjerre
	Residence & Citizenship	City Valby	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Denmark
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Valby Langgade 49A, #1 (left)	City DK-2500 Valby	State & Zip Code/Country Denmark
11	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Pettersen	First Given Name Ingrid	Second Given Name Vivika
	Residence & Citizenship	City Frederiksberg	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Sweden
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Grundtvigsvej 18, 2th	City DK-1864 Frederiksberg	State & Zip Code/Country Denmark
12	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name de Jong	First Given Name Johannes	Second Given Name Cornelis
	Residence & Citizenship	City Bagsvaerd	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship The Netherlands
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Mollemarken 16, 1. th	City DK-Bagsvaerd	State & Zip Code/Country Denmark

COMBINED DECLARATION FOR PATENT APPLICATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY (Includes Reference to PCT International Applications)				Attorney's Docket Number: 5686.200-US
13	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Carsten	First Given Name Behrens	Second Given Name
	Residence & Citizenship	City Copenhagen N	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Denmark
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Lundtoftegade 107, 1 th	City DK-2200 Copenhagen N	State & Zip Code/Country Denmark
14	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Kodra	First Given Name Janos	Second Given Name Tibor
	Residence & Citizenship	City Copenhagen O	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Denmark
	Post Office Address	Post Office Address Ryesgade 111B, IV	City DK-2100 Copenhagen O	State & Zip Code/Country Denmark
15	Full Name of Inventor	Family Name Lau	First Given Name Jesper	Second Given Name
	Residence & Citizenship	City Farum	State or Foreign Country Denmark	Country of Citizenship Denmark
		Post Office Address Rosenvaenget 3	City DK-3520 Farum	State & Zip Code/Country Denmark
<p>I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true, and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under section 100, 1 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon</p>				
Signature of Inventor 1		Signature of Inventor 2		Signature of Inventor 3
Date		Date		Date
Signature of Inventor 4		Signature of Inventor 5		Signature of Inventor 6
Date		Date		Date
Signature of Inventor 7		Signature of Inventor 8		Signature of Inventor 9
Date		Date		Date
Signature of Inventor 10		Signature of Inventor 11		Signature of Inventor 12
Date		Date		Date
Signature of Inventor 13		Signature of Inventor 14		Signature of Inventor 15
Date		Date		Date